## 1 <br> Program Summary

XC series PLC as the controllers, accept the signal and execute the program in the controller, to fulfill the requirements from the users. In this chapter, we start with the program forms, introduce the main features, the supported two program languages etc.

1-1. Programmer Controller's Features

1-2 . Program Language

1-3. Program Format

## Program L anguage

XC series PLC support two kinds of program languages, instruction list and ladder, the two languages can convert to the other;

## Security of the Program

To avoid the stolen or wrong modifying of user program, we encrypt the program. When uploading the encrypted program, it will check in the form of password. This can maintain the user's copyright; meantime, it limits the download, to avoid the modification with the program spitefully.

## Program's comments

When the user program is too long, adding comments to the program and its soft components is necessary.

## Offset Function

Add offset appendix (like X3[D100], M10[D100], D0[D100]) behind coils, data registers can realize indirect addressing. For example, when D100=9, X3[D100]=X14; M10[D100]=M19, D0[D100]=D9

Rich Basic Functions

I XC series PLC offers enough basic instructions, can fulfill basic sequential control, data moving and comparing, arithmetic operation, logic control, data loop and shift etc.
I XC series PLC also support special compare, high speed pulse, frequency testing, precise time, PID control, position control etc for interruption, high speed counter (HSC).

## C L anguage Function Block

XC series PLC support C language function block, users can call the edited function block freely. This function reduces the program quantity greatly.

[^0]XC series PLC support "Stop when power on PLC" function. With this function, when there is a serious problem during PLC running, use this method to stop all output immediately. Besides, with this method, connect PLC when parameters are set wrongly.

## Communication Function

XC series PLC support many communication formats, like basic Modbus communication, CABBUS communication, free format communication. Besides, via special network module, connect to Ether net, GPRS net.

## 1-2. Program L anguage

## 1-2-1. Type

XC series PLC support two types of program language:

## Instruction List

Instruction list inputs in the form of "LD", "AND", "OUT" etc. This is the basic input form of the programs, but it's hard to read and understand;

| E.g.: | Step | Instruction | Soft Components |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | 0 | LD | X000 |
|  | 1 | OR | Y005 |
|  | 2 | ANI | X002 |
|  | 3 | OUT | Y005 |

## Ladder

With sequential control signal and soft components, draw the sequential control graph on program interface, this method is called "Ladder". This method use coil signs etc. to represent sequential circuit, so it's easier to understand the program. Meantime, monitor PLC with the circuit's status.
E.g.:


Convert the above two methods freely:


## 1-3. Program F ormat

## Direct Input

The above two program methods can input in the correspond interface separately, especially in the ladder window, there is a instruction hint function, which improves the program efficiency greatly;


## Panel Configuration

As in XC series PLC, there are many instructions which has complicate usage and many using methods, like pulse output instruction, main unit PID etc. XCPPro also support the configure interface for these special instructions. In the correcpond configure interface, input the parameters and ID according to the requirements will be ok;


For the details of panel configuration，please refer 《XC series PLC user manual【software part】》

## 2 <br> Soft Component's F unction

In chapter 1, we briefly tell the program language of XC series PLC. However, the most important element to a program is the operands. These elements relate to the relays and registers inside the controller. In this chapter, we will describe the functions and using methods of these relays and registers.

## 2-1. Summary of the Soft Components

## 2-2. Structure of the Soft Components

2-3. List of the Soft Components

2-4. Input/output Relays (X, Y)

2-5 . Auxiliary Relays (M)

2-6 . Status Relays (S)

2-7. Timers (T)

2-8 . Counters (C)

2-9. Data Registers (D)

2-10. Constant (K, H)

2-11 . Pointer (P, I)

2-12. Program Principle

## 2-1. Summary of the Soft C omponents

There are many relays, timers and counters inside PLC. They all have countless NO (Normally ON) and NC (Normally Closed) contactors. Connect these contactors with the coils will make a sequential control circuit. Below, we will introduce these soft components briefly;

Input Relay (X)

I Usage of the input relays
The input relays are used to accept the external ON/OFF signal, we use $X$ to state.
I Address Specify Principle
$\ddot{\mathrm{y}}$ In each basic unit, specify the ID of input relay, output relay in the form of X000~X007, X010~X017...,Y000~Y007, Y010~Y017... (octal form)
$\ddot{\mathrm{Y}}$ The expansion module's ID obeys the principle of channel 1 starts from X100/Y100, channel 2 starts from X200/Y200... 7 expansions can be connected in total.

I Points to pay attention when using
$\ddot{y}$ For the input relay's input filter, we use digital filter. Users can change the filter parameters via relate settings.
$\ddot{y} \quad$ We equip enough output relays inside PLC; for the output relays beyond the input/output points, use them as auxiliary relays, program as normal contactors/coils.

## Output Relay (Y)

I Usage of the output relays
Output relays are the interface of drive external loads, represent with sign Y;
I Address Assignment Principle
$\ddot{\mathrm{y}}$ In each basic unit, assign the ID of output relays in the form of Y000~Y007, Y010~Y017... this octal format.
ÿ The ID of expansion obeys the principle of: channel 1 starts from Y100, channel 2 starts from Y200... 7 expansions could be connected totally.

Auxiliary Relays (M)

I Usage of Auxiliary Relays
Auxiliary relays are equipped inside PLC, represent with the sign of M;
I Address assignment principle
In basic units, assign the auxiliary address in the form of decimal
I Points to note
$\ddot{y}$ This type of relays are different with the input/output relays, they can't get external load, can only use in program;
$\ddot{y} \quad$ Retentive relays can keep its ON/OFF status in case of PLC power OFF;

Status Relays (S)
I Usage of status relays
Used as relays in Ladder, represent with "S"
I Address assignment principle
In basic units, assign the ID in the form of decimal
I Points to note
If not used as operation number, they can be used as auxiliary relays, program as normal contactors/coils. Besides, they can be used as signal alarms, for external diagnose.

Timer ( T )
I Usage of the timers
Timers are used to calculate the time pulse like $1 \mathrm{~ms}, 10 \mathrm{~ms}, 100 \mathrm{~ms}$ etc. when reach the set value, the output contactors acts, represent with "T"
I Address assignment principle
In basic units, assign the timer's ID in the form of decimal. But divide ID into several parts according to the clock pulse, accumulate or not. Please refer to chapter 2-2 for details.
I Time pulse
There are three specifications for the timer's clock pulse: $1 \mathrm{~ms}, ~ 10 \mathrm{~ms}, ~ 100 \mathrm{~ms}$. If choose 10 ms timer, carry on addition operation with 10 ms time pulse;
I Accumulation/not accumulation
The times are divided into two modes: accumulation time means even the timer coil's driver is OFF, the timer will still keep the current value; while the not accumulation time means when the count value reaches the set value, the output contact acts, the count value clears to be 0 ;

## Counter (C)

According to different application and purpose, we can divide the counters to different types as below:

I For internal count (for general using/power off retentive usage)
$\ddot{y} \quad 16$ bits counter: for increment count, the count range is $1 \sim 32,767$
$\ddot{y} 32$ bits counter: for increment count, the count range is $1 \sim 2,147,483,647$
$\ddot{\mathrm{y}} \quad$ These counters can be used by PLC's internal signal. The response speed is one scan cycle or longer.

I For High Speed Count (Power off retentive)
$\ddot{y} 32$ bits counter: for increment/decrement count, the count range is $-2,147,483,648 \sim$ $+2,147,483,647$
(single phase increment count, single phase increment/decrement count, AB phase cont) specify to special input points (
$\ddot{y}$ The high speed counter can count 80 KHz frequency, it separates with the PLC's scan cycle;

Data Register (D)

I Usage of Data Registers
Data Registers are used to store data, represent with "D"
I Addressing Form
The data registers in XC series PLC are all 16 bits (the highest bit is the sign bit), combine two data registers together can operate 32 bits (the highest bit is the sign bit) data process.

I Points to note
Same with other soft components, data registers also have common usage type and power off retentive type.

## FlashROM Register (FD)

I Usage of FlashROM registers
FlashROM registers are used to store data soft components, represent with "FD"
I Addressing Form
In basic units, FlashROM registers are addressed in form of decimal;
I Points to note
Even the battery powered off, this area can keep the data. So this area is used to store important parameters. FlashROM can write in about 1,000,000 times, and it takes time at every write. Frequently write can cause permanent damage of FD.

Constant (B) (K) (H)

I In every type of data in PLC, B represents Binary, K represents Decimal, H represents Hexadecimal. They are used to set timers and counters value, or operands of application instructions.

## 2-2. Structure of Soft Components

## 2-2-1 . Structure of M emory

In XC series PLC, there are many registers. Besides the common data registers D, FlashROM registers, we can also make registers by combining bit soft components.

## Data Register D

I For common use, 16 bits
I For common use, 32 bits (via combine two sequential 16 bits registers)
I For power off retentive usage, can modify the retentive zone
I For special usage, occupied by the system, can't be used as common instruction's parameters
I For offset usage (indirect specifies)
$\ddot{y}$ Form: $\operatorname{Dn}[D m], ~ X n[D m], ~ Y n[D m], ~ M n[D m] ~ e t c . ~$


In the above sample, if $\mathrm{D} 0=0$, then $\mathrm{D} 100=\mathrm{D} 10, \mathrm{Y} 0$ is ON .
If M2 turns from OFF to be $\mathrm{ON}, \mathrm{D} 0=5$, then $\mathrm{D} 100=\mathrm{D} 15, \mathrm{Y} 5$ is ON .
Therein, $\mathrm{D} 10[\mathrm{D} 0]=\mathrm{D}[10+\mathrm{D} 0], \mathrm{Y} 0[\mathrm{D} 0]=\mathrm{Y}[0+\mathrm{D} 0]$ 。
$\ddot{y} \quad$ The word offset combined by bit soft components: $\mathrm{DXn}[\mathrm{Dm}]$ represents $\mathrm{DX}[\mathrm{n}+\mathrm{Dm}]$ 。
$\ddot{y} \quad$ The soft components with offset, the offset can be represent by soft component D .

## Timer T/Counter C

I For common usage, 16 bits, represent the current value of timer/counter;
I For common usage, 32 bits, (via combine two sequential 16 bits registers)
I To represent them, just use the letter+ID method, such as T10, C11.
E.g.


In the above example, MOV T11 D0, T11 represents word register;
LD T11, T11 represents bit register.

## FlashROM Register FD

I For power off retentive usage, 16 bits
I For power off retentive usage, 16 bits, (via combine two sequential 16 bits registers)
I For special usage, occupied by the system, can't be used as common instruction's parameters

## Expansion's internal register ED

I For common usage, 16 bits,
I For common usage, 32 bits, (via combine two sequential 16 bits registers)

## Bit soft components combined to be register

I For common usage, 16 bits, (via combine two sequential 16 bits registers)
I The soft components which can be combined to be words are: $\mathrm{X}, ~ \mathrm{Y}, ~ \mathrm{M}, ~ \mathrm{~S}, ~$ T, C

I Format: add "D" in front of soft components, like DM10, represents a 16 bits data from M10~M25
I Get 16 points from DXn, but not beyond the soft components range;
I The word combined by bit soft components can't realize bit addressing; E.g.:

$\ddot{y} \quad$ When M0 changes from OFF to be ON, the value in the word which is combined by Y0~Y17 equals 21, i.e. Y0, Y2, Y4 becomes to be ON
$\ddot{\mathrm{y}} \quad$ Before M 1 activates, if $\mathrm{D} 0=0, \mathrm{DX} 2[\mathrm{D} 0]$ represents a word combined by X2~X21
$\ddot{y}$ If M1 changes from $\mathrm{OFF} \rightarrow \mathrm{ON}, \mathrm{D} 0=3$, then $\mathrm{DX} 2[\mathrm{D} 0]$ represents a

Bit soft components structure is simple, the common ones are $X, ~ Y, ~ M, ~ S, ~ T, ~ C$, besides, a bit of a register can also represents:

## Relay

I Input Relay X, octal type
I Output Relay Y, octal type
I Auxiliary Relay M, S, decimal type
I Auxiliary Relay T, C, decimal type, as the represent method is same with registers, so we need to judge if it's word register or bit register according to the register.

## Register's Bit

I Composed by register's bit, support register D
I Represent method: Dn.m ( $0 \leq m \leq 15$ ): the Nr.m bit of Dn register
I The represent method of word with offset: Dn[Dm].x
I Bit of Word can't compose to be word again;
E.g.:

$\ddot{\mathrm{y}} \quad \mathrm{D} 0.4$ means when the Nr. 4 bit of D0 is 1 , set Y0 ON .
$\ddot{y}$ D5[D1]. 4 means bit addressing with offset, if D1=5, then D5[D1] means the Nr. 4 bit of D10

## 2－3．Soft C omponents List

2－3－1．Soft Components List


| Mnemonic | Name | Range |  |  |  | points |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 10I／O | $16 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $24 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $32 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $10 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | 16 I／O | 24 I／O | $32 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ |
| I／O points ${ }^{* 1}$ | Input Points | X0～X4 | X0～X7 | X0～X13 | X0～X17 | 5 | 8 | 12 | 16 |
|  | Output Points | Y0～Y4 | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 7$ | Y0～Y13 | Y0～Y17 | 5 | 8 | 12 | 16 |
| $\mathrm{X}^{* 2}$ | Internal Relay | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 77$ |  |  |  | 64 |  |  |  |
| $\mathrm{Y}^{* 3}$ | Internal Relay | Y0～Y77 |  |  |  | 64 |  |  |  |
| M | Internal Relay | M0～M199 【M200～M319】＊4 |  |  |  | 320 |  |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage＊5 M8000～M8079 |  |  |  | 128 |  |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{\text {＊5 M }}$ 8120～M8139 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage＊5 M8170～M8172 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5} \mathrm{M} 8238 \sim \mathrm{M} 8242$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5} \mathrm{M} 8350 \sim \mathrm{M} 8370$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| S | Flow | S0～S31 |  |  |  | 32 |  |  |  |
| T | Timer | T0～T23：100ms not accumulation |  |  |  | 80 |  |  |  |
|  |  | T100～T115：100ms accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | T200～T223：10ms not accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | T300～T307： 10 ms accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | T400～T403： 1 ms not accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | T500～T503： 1 ms accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| C | Counter | C0～C23： 16 bits forward counter |  |  |  | 48 |  |  |  |
|  |  | C300～C315： 32 bits forward／backward counter |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | C600～C603：single－phase HSC |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | C620～C621 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | C630～C631 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| D | Data Register | D0～D99【D100～D149】＊4 |  |  |  | 150 |  |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5}$ D8000～D8029 |  |  |  | 138 |  |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5}$ D8060～D8079 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage＊5 ${ }^{\text {D } 8120 \sim \text { D8179 }}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5}$ D8240～D8249 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage＊5 D8306～D8313 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage＊5 D8460～D8469 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| FD | FlashROM | FD0～FD411 |  |  |  | 412 |  |  |  |



| XC2 Series |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Mnemonic | Name | Range |  |  |  | Points |  |  |  |
|  |  | 14 I／O | 16 I／O | 24／32 I／O | 48／60 I／O | $\begin{gathered} 14 \\ \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 16 \\ \text { I/O } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 24 / 32 \\ \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 48 / 60 \\ \text { I/O } \end{gathered}$ |
| $\left\|\begin{array}{c} \text { I/O Points } \\ \cdots 1 \end{array}\right\|$ | Input <br> Points | X0～X7 | X0～X7 | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 15 \\ & \mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 21 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 33 \\ & \mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 43 \end{aligned}$ | 8 | 8 | 14／18 | 28／36 |
|  | Output <br> Points | Y0～Y5 | Y0～Y7 | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 11 \\ & \mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 15 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 23 \\ & \mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 27 \end{aligned}$ | 6 | 8 | 10／14 | 20／24 |
| $\mathrm{X}^{* 2}$ | Internal Relay | X0～X1037 |  |  |  | 544 |  |  |  |
| $\mathrm{Y}^{* 3}$ | Internal Relay | Y0～Y1037 |  |  |  | 544 |  |  |  |
| M | Internal Relay | $\begin{gathered} \text { M0~M2999 } \\ \text { 【M3000~M7999】 } \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |  |  |  | 8000 |  |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5} \mathrm{M} 8000 \sim \mathrm{M} 8767$ |  |  |  | 768 |  |  |  |
| S | Flow | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { S0~S511 } \\ \left\lfloor\mathrm{S} 512 \sim S 1023 】{ }^{2} 4\right. \end{gathered}$ |  |  |  | 1024 |  |  |  |
| T | Timer | T0～T99：100ms not accumulation |  |  |  | 640 |  |  |  |
|  |  | T100～T199：100ms accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | T200～T299：10ms not accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | T300～T399： 10 ms accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | T400～T499： 1 ms not accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | T500～T599： 1 ms accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | T600～T639： 1 ms precise time |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| C | Counter | C0～C299： 16 bits forward counter |  |  |  | 640 |  |  |  |
|  |  | C300～C599： 32 bits forward／backward counter |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | C600～C619：single－phase HSC |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | C620～C629：double－phase HSC |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | C630～C639：AB phase HSC |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| D | Data <br> Register | $\begin{gathered} \text { D0~D999 } \\ \text { 【D4000~D4999】 }{ }^{*} 4 \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |  |  |  | 2000 |  |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5}$ D8000～D8511 |  |  |  | 612 |  |  |  |


|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5}$ D8630～D8729 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| FD | FLASH <br> Register | FD0～FD127 | 128 |
|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5}$ FD8000 $\sim$ FD8383 | 384 |



| Mnemonic | Name | Range |  |  | Points |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 14 I／O | 24／32 I／O | 48／60 I／O | $\begin{gathered} 14 \\ \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 24 / 32 \\ \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 48 / 60 \\ \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O} \end{gathered}$ |
| I／O Points <br> ＊1 | Input Points | X0～X7 | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 15 \\ & \mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 21 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & X 0 \sim X 33 \\ & X 0 \sim X 43 \end{aligned}$ | 8 | 14／18 | 28／36 |
|  | Output Points | Y0～Y5 | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 11 \\ & \mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 15 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{Y} 0 \sim Y 23 \\ & \mathrm{Y} 0 \sim Y 27 \end{aligned}$ | 6 | 10／14 | 20／24 |
| $\mathrm{X}^{* 2}$ | Internal Relay | X0～X1037 |  |  | 544 |  |  |
| $\mathrm{Y}^{* 3}$ | Internal Relay | Y0～Y1037 |  |  | 544 |  |  |
| M | Internal Relay | $\begin{gathered} \text { M0~M2999 } \\ \text { 【M3000~M7999】 }{ }^{2} 4 \end{gathered}$ |  |  | 8000 |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5} \mathrm{M} 8000 \sim$ M8767 |  |  | 768 |  |  |
| S | Flow | $\begin{gathered} \text { S0~S511 } \\ \lfloor\mathrm{S} 512 \sim \mathrm{~S} 1023 】 * 4 \end{gathered}$ |  |  | 1024 |  |  |
| T | TIMER | T0～T99：100ms not accumulation |  |  | 640 |  |  |
|  |  | T100～T199：100ms accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | T200～T299：10ms not accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | T300～T399：10ms accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | T400～T499： 1 ms not accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | T500～T599： 1 ms accumulation |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | T600～T639： 1 ms precise time |  |  |  |  |  |
| C | COUNTER | C0～C299： 16 bits forward counter |  |  | 640 |  |  |
|  |  | C300～C599： 32 bits forward／backward counter |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | C600～C619：single－phase HSC |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | C620～C629：double－phase HSC |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | C630～C639：AB phase HSC |  |  |  |  |  |
| D | DATA <br> REGISTER | $\begin{gathered} \text { D0~D3999 } \\ \text { 【D4000~D7999】 } \end{gathered}$ |  |  | 8000 |  |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5}$ D8000～D9023 |  |  | 1024 |  |  |


| FD | FlashROM REGISTER*6 | FD0~FD1535 | 1536 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5}$ FD80000~FD8511 | 512 |
| $E D^{* 7}$ | EXPANSION'S | ED0~ED16383 | 16384 |




|  | REGISTER $^{* 6}$ | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5}$ FD8000～FD9023 | 1024 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ED $^{* 7}$ | EXPANSION＇S <br> INTERNAL <br> REGISTER | ED0～ED36863 | 36864 |

XCM Series

| Mnemonic | Name | I／O range |  | Points |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 24／32 I／O | 48 I／O | 24／32 I／O | $48 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ |
| I／O Points <br> ※1 | Input Points | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 15 \\ & \mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 21 \end{aligned}$ | X0～X33 | 14／18 | 28 |
|  | Output Points | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { Y0~Y11 } \\ & \text { Y0~Y15 } \end{aligned}$ | Y0～Y23 | 10／14 | 20 |
| $\mathrm{X}^{* 2}$ | Internal Relay | X0～X1037 |  | 544 |  |
| $\mathrm{Y}^{* 3}$ | Internal Relay | Y0～Y1037 |  | 544 |  |
| M | Internal Relay | $\begin{gathered} \text { M0~M2999 } \\ \text { 【M3000~M7999】 } 4 \end{gathered}$ |  | 8000 |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5}$ M8000～M8767 |  | 768 |  |
| S | Flow | $\begin{gathered} \mathrm{S} 0 \sim \mathrm{~S} 511 \\ \lfloor\mathrm{~S} 512 \sim \mathrm{~S} 1023 \rrbracket * 4 \end{gathered}$ |  | 1024 |  |
| T | TIMER | T0～T99： 1 | ccumulation | 640 |  |
|  |  | T100～T199：100ms accumulation |  |  |  |
|  |  | T200～T299： 10 ms not accumulation |  |  |  |
|  |  | T300～T399： 10 ms accumulation |  |  |  |
|  |  | T400～T499： 1 ms not accumulation |  |  |  |
|  |  | T500～T599： 1 ms accumulation |  |  |  |
|  |  | T600～T639：1ms precise time |  |  |  |
| C | COUNTER | C0～C299： | vard counter | 640 |  |
|  |  | C300~C599: | ward／backward |  |  |
|  |  | C600～C6 | phase HSC |  |  |
|  |  | C620～C6 | phase HSC |  |  |
|  |  | C630～C | ase HSC |  |  |
| D | DATA <br> REGISTER |  | 9】】4 | 4000 |  |
|  |  | For Special Usage＊5 ${ }^{\text {D }} 8000 \sim$ D9023 |  | 1024 |  |
| FD | FlashROM | FD0～FD63 |  | 64 |  |


|  | REGISTER $^{* 6}$ | For Special Usage*5 $\mathrm{FD} 8000 \sim$ FD8349 | 460 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | For Special Usage ${ }^{* 5}$ FD8890~FD8999 |  |
| ED ${ }^{* 7}$ | EXPANSION'S <br> INTERNAL <br> REGISTER | ED0~ED36863 | 36864 |

※1: I/O points, means the terminal number that users can use to wire the input, output
$※ 2$ : X , means the internal input relay, the X beyond Input points can be used as middle relay;
※3: Y, means the internal output relay, the Y beyond Output points can be used as middle relay;
※4: The memory zone in【】 is power off retentive zone, soft components $\mathrm{D}, ~ \mathrm{M}, ~ \mathrm{~S}, ~ \mathrm{~T}, ~ \mathrm{C}$ can change the retentive area via setting. Please refer to 2-3-2 for details;
$※ 5$ : for special use, means the special registers occupied by the system, can't be used for other purpose. Please refer to Appendix 1.
※6: FlashROM registers needn't set the power off retentive zone, when power is off (no battery), the data will not lose
※7: Expansion's internal register ED, require PLC hardware V3.0 or above
$※ 8$ : Input coils, output relays are in octal form, the other registers are in decimal form;
※9: The I/O that are not wired with external device can be used as fast internal relays;
$※ 10$ : for the soft components of expansion devices, please refer to relate manuals;

The power off retentive area of XC series PLC are set as below, this area can be set by user again;

|  | Soft components | $\begin{gathered} \text { SET } \\ \text { AREA } \end{gathered}$ | FUNCTION | System's default value | Retentive Zone |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { XC1 } \\ & \text { Series } \end{aligned}$ | D | FD8202 | Start tag of D power off retentive zone | 100 | D100~D149 |
|  | M | FD8203 | Start tag of M power off retentive zone | 200 | M200~M319 |
|  | T | FD8204 | Start tag of T power off retentive zone | 640 | Not set |
|  | C | FD8205 | Start tag of C power off retentive zone | 320 | C320~C631 |
|  | S | FD8206 | Start tag of S power off retentive zone | 512 | S0~S31 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{XC2} \\ & \text { Series } \end{aligned}$ | D | FD8202 | Start tag of D power off retentive zone | 4000 | D4000~D4999 |
|  | M | FD8203 | Start tag of M power off retentive zone | 3000 | M3000~M7999 |
|  | T | FD8204 | Start tag of T power off retentive zone | 640 | Not set |
|  | C | FD8205 | Start tag of C power off retentive zone | 320 | C320~C639 |
|  | S | FD8206 | Start tag of S power off retentive zone | 512 | S512~S1023 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { XC3 } \\ & \text { Series } \end{aligned}$ | D | FD8202 | Start tag of D power off retentive zone | 4000 | D4000~D7999 |
|  | M | FD8203 | Start tag of M power off retentive zone | 3000 | M3000~M7999 |
|  | T | FD8204 | Start tag of T power off retentive zone | 640 | Not set |
|  | C | FD8205 | Start tag of C power off retentive zone | 320 | C320~C639 |
|  | S | FD8206 | Start tag of S power off retentive zone | 512 | S512~S1023 |
|  | ED | FD8207 | Start tag of ED power off retentive zone | 0 | ED0~ED16383 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { XC5 } \\ & \text { Series } \end{aligned}$ | D | FD8202 | Start tag of D power off retentive zone | 4000 | D4000~D7999 |
|  | M | FD8203 | Start tag of M power off retentive zone | 4000 | M4000~M7999 |
|  | T | FD8204 | Start tag of T power off retentive zone | 640 | Not set |
|  | C | FD8205 | Start tag of C power off retentive zone | 320 | C320~C639 |
|  | S | FD8206 | Start tag of S power off retentive zone | 512 | S512~S1023 |
|  | ED | FD8207 | Start tag of ED power off retentive zone | 0 | ED0~ED36863 |
| XCM <br> Series | D | FD8202 | Start tag of D power off retentive zone | 4000 | D4000~D4999 |
|  | M | FD8203 | Start tag of M power off retentive zone | 3000 | M3000~M7999 |
|  | T | FD8204 | Start tag of T power off retentive zone | 640 | Not set |
|  | C | FD8205 | Start tag of C power off retentive zone | 320 | C320~C639 |


|  | S | FD8206 | Start tag of S power off retentive zone | 512 | S512~S1023 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ED | FD8207 | Start tag of ED power off retentive <br> zone | 0 | ED0~ED36863 |

For timer T, we can set not only retentive zone, but also set certain timer's retentive zone

| Soft <br> Components | Set area | F unction | R etentive Zone |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| T | FD8323 | Set the start tag of 100 ms not accumulation timer's retentive zone | The set value ~T99 |
|  | FD8324 | Set the start tag of 100 ms accumulation timer's retentive zone | The set value~T199 |
|  | FD8325 | Set the start tag of 10 ms not accumulation timer's retentive zone | The set value $\sim$ T299 |
|  | FD8326 | Set the start tag of 10 ms accumulation timer's retentive zone | The set value~T399 |
|  | FD8327 | Set the start tag of 1 ms not accumulation timer's retentive zone | The set value $\sim$ T499 |
|  | FD8328 | Set the start tag of 1 ms accumulation timer's retentive zone | The set value $\sim$ T599 |
|  | FD8329 | Set the start tag of 1ms precise timer's retentive zone | The set value $\sim$ T639 |

For counter $C$, we can set not only retentive zone, but also set certain counter's retentive zone

| Soft <br> Components | Set area | Function | Retentive Zone |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| C | FD8330 | Set the start tag of 16 bits positive counter's retentive <br> zone | FD8331 |
|  | Set the start tag of 32 bits positive/negative counter's <br> retentive zone | The set value $\sim$ C599 |  |
|  | FD8332 | Set the start tag of single phase HSC's retentive zone | The set value $\sim$ C619 |
|  | FD8333 | Set the start tag of dual direction HSC's retentive zone | The set value $\sim$ C629 |
|  | FD8334 | Set the start tag of AB phase HSC's retentive zone | The set value $\sim$ C639 |

$※ 1:$ if the whole power off retentive zone is smaller than the segment's retentive area, then the segment's area is invalid. If the total counter's set range is T200~T640, FD8324 value is 150 , then the 100 ms accumulate timer's retentive area $\mathrm{T} 150 \sim \mathrm{~T} 199$ is invalid.

Number List

XC series PLC's input/output are all in octal form, each series numbers are listed below:

| Series | Name | Range |  |  |  | Points |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | $10 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $16 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $24 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $32 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $10 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | 16 <br> $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $24 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $32 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ |
| XC 1 |  | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 4$ | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 7$ | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 13$ | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 17$ | 5 | 8 | 12 | 16 |
|  | Y | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 4$ | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 7$ | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 13$ | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 17$ | 5 | 8 | 12 | 16 |


| Series | Name | Range |  |  |  | Points |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | $14 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $16 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $24 / 32 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $48 / 60 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | 14 <br> $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | 16 <br> $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $24 / 32 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ <br> XC | $48 / 60$ <br> $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ |
|  |  | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 7$ | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 7$ | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 15$ <br> $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 21$ | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 33$ <br> $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 43$ | 8 | 8 | $14 / 18$ | $28 / 36$ |
|  | Y | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 5$ | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 7$ | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 11$ <br> $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 15$ | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 23$ <br> $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 27$ | 6 | 8 | $10 / 14$ | $20 / 24$ |


| Series | Name | Range |  |  |  | Points |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | $14 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $24 / 32 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $48 / 60 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $14 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $24 / 32 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $48 / 60$ <br> $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ |  |
| XC 3 | X | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 7$ | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 15$ <br> $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 21$ | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 33$ <br> $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 43$ | 8 | $14 / 18$ | $28 / 36$ |  |
|  | Y | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 5$ | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 11$ <br> $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 15$ | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 23$ <br> $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 27$ | 6 | $10 / 14$ | $20 / 24$ |  |


| Series | Name | Range |  | Points |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | $24 / 32 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $48 / 60 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $24 / 32 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $48 / 60 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ |
| X XC5 | X | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 15$ <br> $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 21$ | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 33$ <br> $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 43$ | $14 / 18$ | $28 / 36$ |
|  | Y | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 11$ <br> $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 15$ | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 23$ <br> $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 27$ | $10 / 14$ | $20 / 24$ |


| Series | Name | Range |  |  | Points |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 24 I/O | $32 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $48 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $24 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $32 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ | $48 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ |
| XCM | X | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 15$ | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 21$ | $\mathrm{X} 0 \sim \mathrm{X} 33$ | 14 | 18 | 28 |
|  | Y | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 11$ | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 15$ | $\mathrm{Y} 0 \sim \mathrm{Y} 23$ | 10 | 14 | 20 |

## Function

|  | $\longmapsto$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { XC series PLC } \\ & \text { CPU unit } \end{aligned}$ |  | $\longmapsto$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

## Input Relay X

I PLC＇s input terminals are used to accept the external signal input，while the input relays are a type of optical relays to connect PLC inside and input terminals；
I The input relays have countless normally ON／OFF contactors，they can be used freely；
I The input relays which are not connected with external devices can be used as fast internal relays；

## Output Relay Y

I PLC＇s output terminals can be used to send signals to external loads．Inside PLC，output relay＇s external output contactors（including relay contactors，transistor＇s contactors）connect with output terminals．
I The output relays have countless normally ON／OFF contactors，they can be used freely；
I The output relays which are not connected with external devices can be used as fast internal relays；

## Execution Order

| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 주 } \\ & \stackrel{y}{0} \\ & \ddot{ٍ} \end{aligned}$ |  | $\stackrel{\text { B }}{\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{Z}}$ |  | 言 | XC series PLC CPU unit |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { O } \\ & =\underset{亏}{=} \\ & = \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 品 } \\ & \text { 気 } \\ & \text { 覀 } \end{aligned}$ |  |  |  |  | Program Dispose Area |  |  | 总 |  |  |

I Input Disposal
$\ddot{y} \quad$ Before PLC executing the program, read every input terminal's ON/OFF status of PLC to the image area.
$\ddot{y}$ In the process of executing the program, even the input changed, the content in the input image area will not change. However, in the input disposal of next scan cycle, read out the change.
I Output Disposal
$\ddot{y} \quad$ Once finish executing all the instructions, transfer the ON/OFF status of output Y image area to the output lock memory area. This will be the actual output of the PLC.
$\ddot{y}$ The contacts used for the PLC's external output will act according to the device's response delay time.

2-5. Auxiliary Relay (M)

Number List

The auxiliary relays $M$ in XC series PLC are all in decimal form, please refer the details from tables below:

| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | FOR COMMON USE | FOR POWER-OFF RETENTIVE USE | FOR SPECIAL USE |
| XC1 | M | M000~M199 | M200~M319 | M8000~M8079 |
|  |  |  |  | M8120~M8139 |
|  |  |  |  | M8170~M8172 |
|  |  |  |  | M8238~M8242 |
|  |  |  |  | M8350~M8370 |


| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | FOR COMMON <br> USE | FOR POWER-OFF <br> RETENTIVE USE | FOR SPECIAL USE |
|  | M | M000~M2999 | M3000~M7999 | M8000~M8767 |


| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | FOR COMMON <br> USE | FOR POWER-OFF <br> RETENTIVE USE | FOR SPECIAL USE |
|  | M | M000~M2999 | M3000~M7999 | M8000~M8767 |


| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |


|  |  | FOR COMMON <br> USE | FOR POWER-OFF <br> RETENTIVE USE | FOR SPECIAL USE |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| XC5 | M | M000~M3999 | M4000~M7999 | M8000 $\sim \mathrm{M} 8767$ |


| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | FOR COMMON <br> USE | FOR POWER-OFF <br> RETENTIVE USE | FOR SPECIAL USE |
| XCM |  | M000~M2999 | M3000~M7999 | M8000~M8767 |

Function

In PLC, auxiliary relays $M$ are used frequently. This type of relay's coil is same with the output relay. They are driven by soft components in PLC;
auxiliary relays $M$ have countless normally ON/OFF contactors. They can be used freely, but this type of contactors can't drive the external loads.
I For common use
$\ddot{y} \quad$ This type of auxiliary relays can be used only as normal auxiliary relays. I.e. if power supply suddenly stop during the running, the relays will disconnect.
$\ddot{y}$ Common usage relays can't be used for power off retentive, but the zone can be modified;
| For Power Off Retentive Use
$\ddot{y} \quad$ The auxiliary relays for power off retentive usage, even the PLC is OFF, they can keep the ON/OFF status before power OFF.
$\ddot{y} \quad$ Power off retentive zone can be modified by the user;
$\ddot{y} \quad$ Power off retentive relays are usually used to memory the status before stop the power, then when power the PLC on again, the status can run again;

I For Special Usage
$\ddot{y}$ Special relays refer some relays which are defined with special meanings or functions, start from M8000.
$\ddot{y}$ There are two types of usages for special relays, one type is used to drive the coil, the other type is used to the specified execution;
E.g.: M8002 is the initial pulse, activates only at the moment of start M8033 is "all output disabled"
ÿ Special auxiliary relays can't be used as normal relay M;


XC series PLC's status relays $S$ are addressed in form of decimal; each subfamily's ID are listed below:

| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | FOR COMMON USE | FOR POWER-OFF RETENTIVE USE |
| XC 1 | S | S000~S031 | - |


| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | FOR COMMON USE | FOR POWER-OFF RETENTIVE USE |
| XC2 | S | S000~S511 | S512~S1023 |


| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | FOR COMMON USE | FOR POWER-OFF RETENTIVE USE |
| XC3 | S | S000~S511 | S512~S1023 |


| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | FOR COMMON USE | FOR POWER-OFF RETENTIVE USE |
| XC5 | S | S000~S511 | S512~S1023 |


| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | FOR COMMON USE | FOR POWER-OFF RETENTIVE USE |
| XCM | S | S000~S511 | S512~S1023 |

Function
Status relays are very import in ladder program; usually use them with instruction "STL". In the form on flow, this can make the program's structure much clear and easy to modify;

I For common use
After shut off the PLC power, this type of relays will be OFF status;
I For Power Off Retentive Use
$\ddot{y}$ The status relays for power off retentive usage, even the PLC is OFF, they can keep the ON/OFF status before power OFF.
$\ddot{y}$ Power off retentive zone can be modified by the user;
I The status relays also have countless "normally ON/OFF" contactors. So users can use them freely in the program;

| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | FOR COMMON USE | POINTS |
| XC1 | T | T0~T23: 100ms not accumulation | 80 |
|  |  | T100~T115: 100 ms accumulation |  |
|  |  | T200~T223: 10ms not accumulation |  |
|  |  | T300~T307: 10 ms accumulation |  |
|  |  | T400~T403: 1 ms not accumulation |  |
|  |  | T500~T503: 1 ms accumulation |  |
| $\begin{gathered} \mathrm{XC} 2 \\ \mathrm{XC} 3 \\ \mathrm{XC} 5 \\ \mathrm{XCM} \end{gathered}$ | T | T0~T99: 100ms not accumulation | 640 |
|  |  | T100~T199: 100ms accumulation |  |
|  |  | T200~T299: 10ms not accumulation |  |
|  |  | T300~T399: 10 ms accumulation |  |
|  |  | T400~T499: 1 ms not accumulation |  |
|  |  | T500~T599: 1 ms accumulation |  |
|  |  | T600~T639: 1 ms with precise time |  |



The timers accumulate the $1 \mathrm{~ms}, 10 \mathrm{~ms}, 10 \mathrm{~ms}$ clock pulse, the output contactor activates when the accumulation reaches the set value;

We use OUT or TMR instruction to time for the normal timers. We use constant (K) to set the value, or use data register ( D ) to indirect point the set value;


I If X0 is ON, then T200 accumulate 10 ms clock pulse based on the current value; when the accumulation value reaches the set value K200, the timer's output contact activates. I.e. the output contact activates 2 s later. If X0 breaks, the timer resets, the output contact resets;

I Both OUT and TMR can realize the time function. But if use OUT, the start time is 0 ; if use TMR, the start time is 1 scan cycle


If X 001 is ON ，then T300 accumulate 10 ms clock pulse based on the current value；when the accumulation value reaches the set value K2000，the timer＇s output contact activates．I．e．the output contact activates 2 s later．

Even if X0 breaks，the timer will continue to accumulation on re－starting． The accumulation time is 20 ms ；
If X 002 is ON ，the timer will be reset， the output contacts reset；


## Specify the set value



《Register（D）》

T10 is the timer with 100 ms as the unit．Specify 100 as the constant，then $0.1 \mathrm{~s}^{*} 100=10$ s timer works；



When X000 is ON, Y000 starts to glitter.
T1 controls the OFF time of Y000, T2 controls the ON time of Y000.

## 2-8. C ounter ( C )

Number list
XC series PLC counters' number are all decimal, please see the following table for all the counter numbers.

| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | FOR COMMON USE | POINTS |
| XC1 | C | C0~C23: 16 bits forward counter | 48 |
|  |  | C300~C315: 32 bits forward/backward counter |  |
|  |  | C600~C603: single-phase HSC |  |
|  |  | C620~C621 |  |
|  |  | C630~C631 |  |
| $\begin{gathered} \mathrm{XC} 2 \\ \mathrm{XC} 3 \\ \mathrm{XC} 5 \\ \mathrm{XCM} \end{gathered}$ | C | C0~C299: 16 bits forward counter | 640 |
|  |  | C300~C599: 32 bits forward/backward counter |  |
|  |  | C600~C619: single-phase HSC |  |
|  |  | C620~C629: double-phase HSC |  |
|  |  | C630~C639: AB phase HSC |  |

All the counters number meaning:

| TYPE | DESCRIPTION |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits forward counter | $\mathrm{C} 0 \sim \mathrm{C} 299$ |  |
| 32 bits forward/backward <br> counter | $\mathrm{C} 300 \sim \mathrm{C} 599 \quad$ (C300,C302..C598)(each occupies <br> number) the number should be even | counters |
| HSC (High Speed <br> Counter) | C600~C634(C600,C602..C634)( (each <br> number) the number should be even | occupies 2 counters |

1: Please see chapter 5 for high speed counter.

## Counter

 characteristicsThe characteristics of 16 bits and 32 bits counters:

| Items | 16 bits counter | 32 bits counter |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Count direction | Positive | Positive/negative |
| The set value | $1 \sim 32,767$ | $-2,147,483,648 \sim+2,147,483,647$ |
| The assigned set <br> value | Constant K or data register | Same as the left, but data register must be in a <br> couple |
| Changing of the <br> current value | Change after positive count | Change after positive count (Loop counter) |
| Output contact | Hold the action after <br> positive count | Hold the action after positive count, reset if <br> negative count |
| Reset activates | When executing RST command, counter's current value is 0, output contacts <br> recover |  |
| The current value <br> register | 16 bits | 32 bits |

Function
The assignment of common use counters and power off retentive counters, can me changed via FD parameters from peripheral devices;

16 bits binary increment counters, the valid value is $\mathrm{K} 1 \sim \mathrm{~K} 32,767$ (decimal type constant). The set value K0 and K1 has the same meaning. i.e. the output contact works on the first count starts


If cut the PLC power supply, the normal counter value become zero, the retentive counter can store the value, it can accumulate the value of last time.

I When X001 is ON once, the counter increases 1 . When the counter value is 10 , its output is activated. After, when the X001 is ON again, the counter continues increasing 1.
I If X000 is ON, reset counter, the counter value becomes zero.
I It also can set the counter value in D register. For example, $\mathrm{D} 10=123$ is the same as K123.


Set the count It includes 16 bits and 32 bits count value． value
u 16 bits counter

《set as constant K 》


《set in D register》

u 32 bits counter

《set as constant K》


《set in D register》


## Count value

C0~C299 are 16 bits linear increase counter ( $0 \sim 32767$ ), when the counter value reaches 32767 , it will stop count and keep the state.

C300~C599 are 32 bits linear increase/decrease counter ( $-2147483648 \sim+2147483647$ ), when the counter value reaches 2147483647 , it will become -2147483648 , when the counter value reaches -2147483648 , it will become 2147483647 , the counter state will change as the count value.

## 2-9. Data register (D)

Address list

$$
\mathrm{XC} \text { series PLC data register } \mathrm{D} \text { address is shown as below: }
$$

| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | FOR COMMON USE | FOR POWER OFF RETENTIVE USE | FOR SPECIAL USE |  |
| XC1 | D | D0~D99 | D100~D149 | D8000~D8029 | 138 |
|  |  |  |  | D8060~D8079 |  |
|  |  |  |  | D8120~D8179 |  |
|  |  |  |  | D8240~D8249 |  |
|  |  |  |  | D8306~D8313 |  |
|  |  |  |  | D8460~D8469 |  |
|  | D |  |  | D8000~D8511 |  |
|  | D |  |  | D8630~D8729 |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{XC} 3 \\ & \mathrm{XC} 5 \end{aligned}$ | D | D0~D3999 | D4000~D7999 | D8000~D9023 | 1024 |
| XCM | D | D0~D2999 | D3000~D4999 | D8000~D9023 | 1024 |

Structure
Data register is soft element which used to store data, it includes 16 bits and 32 bits. ( 32 bits contains two registers, the highest bit is sign bit )


Use the applied instruction to read and write the register data. Or use other devices such as HMI.

32 bits value is consisted of two registers. The range is $-2147483648 \sim 2147483647$.


When appoint the 32bits register, if set D0, the PLC will connect the next register D1 as the high bits. Generally, we often appoint even address register.

## Function

I Normal type
$\ddot{y} \quad$ When write a new value in the register, the former value will be covered.
$\ddot{y} \quad$ When PLC from RUN to STOP or STOP to RUN, the value in the register will be cleared.
I Retentive type
$\ddot{y} \quad$ When PLC from RUN to STOP or power off, the value in the register will be retained.
$\ddot{y} \quad$ The retentive register range can be set by user.
I Special type
$\ddot{y} \quad$ Special register is used to set special data, or occupied by the system.
$\ddot{y} \quad$ Some special registers are initialized when PLC is power on.
$\ddot{y} \quad$ Please refer to the appendix for the special register address and function.
I Used as offset (indirect appoint)
$\ddot{y} \quad$ Data register can be used as offset of soft element.
$\ddot{y}$ Format: $\mathrm{Dn}[\mathrm{Dm}], ~ \mathrm{Xn}[\mathrm{Dm}], ~ \mathrm{Yn}[\mathrm{Dm}], ~ \mathrm{Mn}[\mathrm{Dm}]$.
$\ddot{y} \quad$ Word offset: $\mathrm{DXn}[\mathrm{Dm}]$ means $\mathrm{DX}[\mathrm{n}+\mathrm{Dm}]$.
$\ddot{y} \quad$ The offset value only can be set as $D$ register.


When $\mathrm{D} 0=0, \mathrm{D} 100=\mathrm{D} 10, \mathrm{Y} 0$ is ON ;
When M 2 is from $\mathrm{OFF} \rightarrow \mathrm{ON}, \quad \mathrm{D} 0=5, \mathrm{D} 100=\mathrm{D} 15, \mathrm{Y} 5$ is ON .
$\mathrm{D} 10[\mathrm{D} 0]=\mathrm{D}[10+\mathrm{D} 0], \mathrm{Y} 0[\mathrm{D} 0]=\mathrm{Y}[0+\mathrm{D} 0]$.

Example
Data register D can deal with many kinds of data and realize various controls.

I Data storage


When M0 is ON, write 100 into D0.(16 bits value)

When M1 is ON, write 41100 into D11,D10 (32bits value)

I Data transfer


When M0 is ON, transfer the value of D10 to D0

I Read the timer and counter


When M0 is ON, move the value of C 10 to D 0 .

I As the set value of timer and counter


When X0 is ON, T10 starts to work, the time is set in D0.
When X1 is ON once, C300 increase 1, when C300 value=D1, C300 coil outputs.

## 2-10. Constant

Data process
XC series PLC use the following 5 number systems.

I DEC: DECIMAL NUMBER
$\ddot{y} \quad$ The preset number of counter and timer ( constant K)
$\ddot{\mathrm{y}} \quad$ The number of Auxiliary relay M , timer T , counter C , state S .
$\ddot{y} \quad$ Set as the operand value and action of applied instruction (constant K)

I HEX: HEXADECIMAL NUMBER
$\ddot{y} \quad$ Set as the operand value and action of applied instruction (constant K)

I BIN: BINARY NUMBER
$\ddot{\mathrm{y}}$ Inside the PLC, all the numbers will be processed by binary. But when monitoring on the device, all the binary will be transformed into HEX or DEC.

I OCT: OCTAL NUMBER
$\ddot{y} \quad$ XC series PLC I/O relays are addressed in OCT. Such as $[0-7,10-17, \ldots .70-77,100-107]$.

I BCD: BINARY CODE DECIMAL
$\ddot{y} \quad \mathrm{BCD}$ uses 4 bits binary number to display decimal number $0-9$. BCD can be used in 7 segments LED and BCD output digital switch

I Other numbers ( float number)
XC series PLC can calculate high precision float numbers. It is calculated by binary numbers, and display by decimal numbers.

## Display

PLC program should use $K, H$ to process values. $K$ means decimal numbers, H means hex numbers. Please note the PLC input/output relay use octal address.

I Constant K
K is used to display decimal numbers. K10 means decimal number 10. It is used to set timer and counter value, operand value of applied instruction.

## I Constant H

H is used to display hex numbers. H10 means hex number 10. It is used to set operand value of applied instruction.

## 2-11. PROGRAM PRINCIPLE

I Tag P, I
Tag P, I are used in branch division and interruption.
Tag for branch $(\mathrm{P})$ is used in condition jump or subroutine's jump target;
Tag for interruption (I) is used to specify the e input interruption, time interruption;
The tags P, I are both in decimal form, each coding principle is listed below:

| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| XC1, XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM | P | $\mathrm{P} 0 \sim \mathrm{P99999}$ |


| SERIES | NAME | RANGE |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | FOR EXTERNAL INTERRUPTION |  |  | For time interruption |
|  |  | Input terminals | Rising edge interruption | Falling edge interruption |  |
| XC2 | I | X2 | I0000 | I0001 | There are 10 channels time interruption, the represent method is: $\mathrm{I} 40^{* *} \sim \mathrm{I} 49^{* *}$. ("**" represents interruption time, the unit is mm ) |
|  |  | X5 | I0100 | I0101 |  |
|  |  | X10 | I0200 | I0201 |  |


| SERIES | NAME | I/O | RANGE |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | FOR EXTERNAL INTERRUPTION |  |  | For time interruption |
|  |  |  | $\begin{gathered} \text { Input } \\ \text { terminals } \end{gathered}$ | Rising Falling <br> edge edge <br> interruption interruption |  |  |
| XC3 | I | 14 | X7 | I0000 | I0001 | There are 10 channels time interruption, the represent method is: $\mathrm{I} 40^{* *} \sim \mathrm{I} 49^{* *}$. ("**" represents interruption time, the unit is mm ) |
|  |  | $\begin{aligned} & 24 \\ & 32 \end{aligned}$ | X2 | I0000 | I0001 |  |
|  |  |  | X5 | I0100 | I0101 |  |
|  |  |  | X10 | I0200 | I0201 |  |
|  |  | 19 | X10 | I0000 | I0001 |  |
|  |  | 48 | X7 | I0100 | I0101 |  |
|  |  | 60 | X6 | I0200 | I0201 |  |


| SERIES | NAME | I/O | RANGE |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | FOR EXTERNAL INTERRUPTION |  |  | For time interruption |
|  |  |  | Input terminals | Rising edge <br> interruption | Falling <br> edge <br> interruption |  |
| XC5 | I | $\begin{aligned} & 24 \\ & 32 \end{aligned}$ | X2 | I0000 | I0001 | There are 10 channels time interruption, the represent method is: $\mathrm{I} 40^{* *} \sim \mathrm{I} 49^{* *}$. ("**" represents interruption time, the unit is mm ) |
|  |  |  | X5 | I0100 | I0101 |  |
|  |  |  | X10 | I0200 | I0201 |  |
|  |  |  | X11 | I0300 | I0301 |  |
|  |  |  | X12 | I0400 | I0401 |  |
|  |  | $\begin{aligned} & 48 \\ & 60 \end{aligned}$ | X2 | I0000 | I0001 |  |
|  |  |  | X5 | I0100 | I0101 |  |
|  |  |  | X10 | I0200 | I0201 |  |


| SERIES | NAME | I/O | RANGE |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | FOR EXTERNAL INTERRUPTION |  |  | For time interruption |
|  |  |  | Input terminals | Rising edge interruption | Falling edge interruption |  |
| XCM | I | 24 | X2 | I0000 | I0001 | There are 10 channels time interruption, the represent method is: $\mathrm{I} 40^{* *} \sim \mathrm{I} 49^{* *}$. |
|  |  | 32 | X5 | I0100 | I0101 |  |


|  |  | X 10 | I 0200 | I 0201 |  | ("**" represents interruption time, the <br> unit is mm) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | X 11 | I 0300 | I 0301 |  |  |
|  | X 12 | I 0400 | I 0401 |  |  |  |



Tag I is usually used in interruption, including external interruption, time interruption etc. use with IRET (interruption return), EI (enable interruption), DI (disable interruption);
I External interruption
$\ddot{y} \quad$ Accept the input signal from the special input terminals, not effected by the scan cycle. Activate the input signal, execute the interruption subroutine.
$\ddot{y}$ With external interruption, PLC can dispose the signal shorter than scan cycle; So it can be used as essential priority disposal in sequence control, or used in short time pulse control.
I Time interruption
$\ddot{y} \quad$ Execute the interruption subroutine at each specified interruption loop tine. Use
this interruption in the control which requires it to be different with PLC's operation cycle;

I Action order of input/output relays and response delay
ÿ Input disposal
Before PLC executing the program, read all the input terminal's ON/OFF status of PLC to the image area. In the process of executing the program, even the input changed, the content in the input image area will not change. However, in the input disposal of next scan cycle, read out the change.
ÿ Output disposal
Once finish executing all the instructions, transfer the ON/OFF status of output Y image area to the output lock memory area. This will be the actual output of the PLC. The contacts used for the PLC's exterior output will act according to the device's response delay time.

When use this input/output format in a batch, the drive time and operation cycle of input filter and output device will also appear response delay.

## I Not accept narrow input pulse signal

PLC's input ON/OFF time should be longer than its loop time. If consider input filter's response delay 10 ms , loop time is 10 ms , then ON/OFF time needs 20 ms separately. So, up to 1 , $000 /(20+20)=25 \mathrm{~Hz}$ input pulse can't be disposed. But, this condition could be improved when use PLC's special function and applied instructions.

I Dual output (Dual coils) action


When executing dual output (use dual coil), the back side act in prior.

As shown in the left map, please consider the things of using the same coil Y003 at many positions:
E.g. $\mathrm{X} 001=\mathrm{ON}, \mathrm{X} 002=\mathrm{OFF}$

At first, X001 is ON, its image area is ON, output Y004 is also ON.

But, as input X002 is OFF, the image area of Y003 is OFF.

So, the actual output is: $\mathrm{Y} 003=\mathrm{OFF}$,
$\mathrm{Y} 004=\mathrm{ON}$.

## 3 <br> Basic Program Instructions

In this chapter, we tell the basic instructions and their functions.

3-1 . Basic Instructions List

3-2 . [LD], [LDI], [OUT]

3-3 . [AND], [ANI]

3-4 . [OR], [ORI]

3-5 . [LDP], [LDF], [ANDP], [ANDF], [ORP], [ORF]

3-6 . [LDD], [LDDI]

3-7 . [ORB]

3-8 . [ANB]

3-9 . [MCS], [MCR]

3-10 . [ALT]

3-11 . [PLS], [PLF]

3-12. [SET], [RST]

3-13 . [OUT], [RST] (Aim at counter device)

3-14. [NOP], [END]

3-15 . [GROUP], [GROUPE]

3-16. Items to be attended when programming

## 3-1. Basic Instructions List

All XC1, XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM series support the below instructions:

| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Device | Chapter |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { LD } \\ (\mathrm{LoaD}) \end{gathered}$ | Initial logical operation contact type NO (normally open) |  | 3-2 |
| LDD <br> (LoaD <br> Directly) | Read the status from the contact directly |  | 3-6 |
| $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { LDI } \\ \text { (LoaD } \\ \text { Inverse) } \end{gathered}$ | Initial logical operation contact type NC (normally closed) |  | 3-2 |
| LDDI | Read the normally closed contact directly | $\operatorname{chc}_{x}^{x 0}$ | 3-6 |
| $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { LDP } \\ \text { (LoaD } \\ \text { Pulse) } \end{gathered}$ | Initial logical operation-Rising edge pulse |  | 3-5 |
| LDF <br> (LoaD <br> Falling <br> Pulse) | Initial logical operation-Falling /trailing edge pulse |  | 3-5 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { AND } \\ & \text { (AND) } \end{aligned}$ | Serial connection of NO (normally open) contacts |  | 3-3 |
| ANDD | Read the status from the contact directly |  | 3-6 |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { ANI } \\ \text { (AND } \\ \text { Inverse) } \end{gathered}$ | Serial connection of NC (normally closed) contacts |  | 3-3 |
| ANDDI | Read the normally closed contact directly | $\min _{x}^{x_{0}}$ | 3-6 |


| ANDP <br> (AND <br> Pulse) | Serial connection of rising <br> edge pulse |  | M0 | $3-5$ |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ANDF <br> (AND <br> Falling <br> pulse) | Serial connection of <br> falling/trailing edge pulse | X, Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m, FDn.m |  |  |


| OUTD | Output to the contact directly | $\boldsymbol{P}_{\mathrm{Y}}$ | 3-6 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { SET } \\ \text { (SET) } \end{gathered}$ | Set a bit device permanently ON | $\mid \longmapsto$ SETY0 <br> Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m | 3-12 |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { RST } \\ (\mathrm{ReSeT}) \end{gathered}$ | Reset a bit device permanently OFF |  | 3-12 |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { PLS } \\ (\mathrm{PuLSe}) \end{gathered}$ | Rising edge pulse |  | 3-11 |
| PLF <br> (PuLse <br> Falling) | Falling/trailing edge pulse |  | 3-11 |
| MCS <br> (New bus line start) | Connect the public serial contacts |  | 3-9 |
| MCR <br> (Bus line return) | Clear the public serial contacts |  | 3-9 |
| ALT <br> (Alternate state) | The status of the assigned device is inverted on every operation of the instruction |  | 3-10 |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { END } \\ \text { (END) } \end{gathered}$ | Force the current program scan to end | END <br> None | 3-14 |
| GROUP | Group | GROUP <br> None | 3-15 |
| GROUPE | Group End |  <br> None | 3-15 |
| TMR | Time | Wr ${ }^{\text {T0 }}$ ( ${ }^{\text {K10 }}$ | 2-7 |

## M nemonic and Function

| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Operands |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { LD } \\ (\text { LoaD }) \end{array}$ | Initial logic operation contact type NO (Normally Open) |  |
| LDI <br> (LoaD Inverse) | Initial logic operation contact type NC (Normally Closed) | Devices : X, Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m, FDn.m |
| $\begin{array}{\|l} \hline \text { OUT } \\ \text { (OUT) } \end{array}$ | Final logic operation type drive coil |  |

## Statement

I Connect the LD and LDI instructions directly to the left bus bar. Or use them to define a new block of program when using ANB instruction.
I OUT instruction is the coil drive instruction for the output relays, auxiliary relays, status, timers, counters. But this instruction can't be used for the input relays
I Can not sequentially use parallel OUT command for many times.
I For the timer's time coil or counter's count coil, after using OUT instruction, set constant K is necessary.
I For the constant K's setting range, actual timer constant, program's step relative to OUT instruction (include the setting value), See table below:

| Timer, Counter | Setting Range of constant K | The actual setting value |  |  |  |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 ms Timer |  |  |  | $1 \sim 32,767$ | $0.001 \sim 32.767 \mathrm{sec}$ |
| 10 ms Timer |  | $0.01 \sim 327.67 \mathrm{sec}$ |  |  |  |
| 100 ms Timer |  | $0.1 \sim 3276.7 \mathrm{sec}$ |  |  |
| 16 bits counter | $1 \sim 32,767$ | Same as the left |  |  |  |


| 32 bits counter | $1 \sim 2,147,483,647$ | Same as the left |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |



3-3. [AND], [ANI]
M nemonic and Function

| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Operands |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { AND } \\ & \text { (AND) } \end{aligned}$ | Serial connection of NO (Normally Open) contacts |  |
| ANI <br> (ANd <br> Inverse) | Serial connection of NC (Normally Closed) contacts |  |

## Statements

I Use the AND and the ANI instruction for serial connection of contacts. As many contacts as required can be connected in series. They can be used for many times.
I The output processing to a coil, through writing the initial OUT instruction is called a "follow-on" output (For an example see the program below: OUT M2 and OUT Y003). Follow-on outputs are permitted repeatedly as long as the output order is correct. There's no limit for the serial connected contacts' Nr. and follow-on outputs' number.
Program

3-4.[OR],[ORI]

## M nemonic and Function

| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Operands |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| OR <br> (OR) | Parallel connection <br> of NO (Normally <br> Open) contacts | Mo |
| Operands: X, Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m, FDn.m |  |  |
| ORI <br> (OR <br> Inverse) | Parallel connection <br> of NC (Normally <br> Closed) contacts | M0 |

## Statements

I Use the OR and ORI instructions for parallel connection of contacts. To connect a block that contains more than one contact connected in series to another circuit block in parallel, use an ORB instruction, which will be described later;
I OR and ORI start from the instruction's step, parallel connect with the LD and LDI instruction's step said before. There is no limit for the parallel connect times.


| LD | X5 |
| :--- | :--- |
| OR | X6 |
| OR | M11 |
| OUT | Y6 |
| LDI | Y6 |
| AND | M4 |
| OR | M12 |
| ANI | X7 |
| OR | M13 |
| OUT | M100 |



The parallel connection with OR, ORI instructions should connect with LD, LDI instructions in principle. But behind the ANB instruction, it's still ok to add a LD or LDI instruction.

3-5.[LDP],[LDF],[ANDP],[ANDF],[ORP],[ORF]

M nemonic and Function

| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Operands |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| LDP <br> (LoaD <br> Pulse) | Initial <br> operation-Rising <br> pulse | logical <br> edge |  |
| LDF <br> (LoaD <br> Falling <br> pulse) | Initial logical operation <br> Falling/trailing edge pulse | Operands: X, Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m, FDn.m |  |
| ANDP <br> (AND <br> Pulse) | Serial connection <br> Rising edge pulse | of | Operands: X, Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m, FDn.m |

## Statements

I LDP, ANDP, ORP are active for one program scan after the associated devices switch from OFF to ON.

I LDF, ANDF, ORF are active for one program scan after the associated devices switch from ON to OFF.


| LDP | X5 |
| :--- | :--- |
| ORP | X6 |
| OUT | M13 |
| LD | M8000 |
| ANDP | X7 |
| OUT | M15 |

3-6.[LDD],[LDDI],[ANDD],[ANDDI],[ORD],[ORDI], [OUTD]

M nemonic and Function

| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Operands |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| LDD | Read the status from the contact directly |  |
| LDDI | Read the normally closed contact directly | $\qquad$ <br> Devices: X |
| ANDD | Read the status from the contact directly |  <br> Devices: X |
| ANDDI | Read the normally closed contact directly | $\qquad$ <br> Devices: X |
| ORD | Read the status from the contact directly |  |


|  |  | Devices: X |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ORDI | Read the normally <br> closed contact directly | Output to the contact <br> directly |
| OUTD |  |  |

## Statements

I The function of LDD, ANDD, ORD instructions are similar with LD, AND, OR; LDDI, ANDDI, ORDI instructions are similar with LDI, ANDI, ORI; but if the operand is X, the LDD, ANDD, ORD commands read the signal from the terminals directly, this is the only difference.
I OUTD and OUT are output instructions. But if use OUTD, output immediately if the condition comes true, needn't wait the next scan cycle.


## 3-7. [ORB]

## M nemonic and Function

| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Devices |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ORB <br> (OR Block) | Parallel connection <br> of multiply parallel <br> circuits | Devices: none |

## Statements

I The serial connection with two or more contacts is called "serial block". If parallel connect the serial block, use LD, LDI at the branch start place, use ORB at the stop place;
I As the ANB instruction, an ORB instruction is an independent instruction and is not associated with any device number.
I There are no limitations to the number of parallel circuits when using an ORB instruction in the sequential processing configuration.

Program


Recommended good programming method:

LD X0
AND X1
LD X2
AND X3
ORB
LD X 4
AND X5
ORB

Non-preferred batch programming method :

LD X0
AND X1
LD X2
AND X3
LD X4
AND X5
ORB
ORB

## M nemonic and Function

| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Devices |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ANB | Serial | connection of |
| (And |  |  |
| Block) | multiply <br> parallel circuits | Devices: none |

Statements
I To declare the starting point of the circuit block, use a LD or LDI instruction. After completing the parallel circuit block, connect it to the preceding block in series using the ANB instruction.
I It is possible to use as many ANB instructions as necessary to connect a number of parallel circuit blocks to the preceding block in series.

Program


## 3-9. [M CS], [M CR]

| $M$ nemonic and Function |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Devices |
| MCS <br> (Master control) | Denotes the start of a master control block | Devices: None |
| MCR <br> (Master <br> control <br> Reset) | Denotes the end of a master control block | Devices : None |

## Statements

I After the execution of an MCS instruction, the bus line (LD, LDI) shifts to a point after the MCS instruction. An MCR instruction returns this to the original bus line.
I MCS, MCR instructions should use in pair.
I The bus line could be used nesting. Between the matched MCS, MCR instructions use matched MCS, MCR instructions. The nest level increase with the using of MCS instruction. The max nest level is 10 . When executing MCR instruction, go back to the upper bus line.
I When use flow program, bus line management could only be used in the same flow. When end some flow, it must go back to the main bus line.


## M nemonic and Function

| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Devices |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| ALT | The status of the <br> assigned <br> Alternate <br> inverted onses every <br> status) | ALT M0 <br> instration of the  | Devices: Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m |  |

## Statements

The status of the destination device is alternated on every operation of the ALT instruction.

| Program | M100 | ALT | M0 | LDP | M100 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  | ALT | M0 |
| M0 |  |  |  | LD | M0 |
| M0 |  |  |  | OUT | Y0 |
|  |  |  |  | LDI | M0 |
|  |  |  |  | OUT | Y1 |

## 3-11. [PLS], [PLF]

M nemonic and Function

| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Devices |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| PLS <br> (Pulse) | Rising edge pulse | Devices: Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m |
| PLF <br> (Pulse <br> Falling) | Falling/trailing edge pulse | Devices: Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m |

I When a PLS instruction is executed, object devices $Y$ and $M$ operate for one operation cycle after the drive input signal has turned ON.
I When a PLF instruction is executed, object devices Y and M operate for one operation cycle after the drive input signal has turned OFF.

| Program | X0 | PLS | M0 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { LD } \\ & \text { PLS } \end{aligned}$ | X0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  | M0 |
|  | M0 | SET | Y0 | LD | M0 |
|  |  |  |  | SET | Y0 |
|  | X1 |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | PLF | M1 | LD | X1 |
|  | M1 |  |  | PLF | M1 |
|  |  | RST | Y0 | PLF | M1 |
|  |  |  |  | LD | M1 |
|  |  |  |  | RST | Y0 |



3-12. [SET],[RST]

## $M$ nemonic and Function

| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Devices |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| SET (Set) | Set a bit device permanently ON | Devices: Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m |
| RST(Reset) | Reset a bit device permanently OFF | Devices: Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m |

Statements
I Turning ON X010 causes Y000 to turn ON. Y000 remains ON even after X010 turns OFF. Turning ON X011 causes Y000 to turn OFF. Y000 remains OFF even after X011 turns OFF. It's the same with M, S.
I SET and RST instructions can be used for the same device as many times as necessary. However, the last instruction activated determines the current status.

I Besides, it's also possible to use RST instruction to reset the current contents of timer, counter and contacts.
I When use SET, RST commands, avoid to use the same ID with OUT command;


LD X10
SET Y0
LD X11
RST Y0
LD X 12
SET M50
LD X13
RST M50
LD X14
SET S0
LD X15
RST S0
LD X10
OUT T250 K10
LD X17
RST T250

## 3－13．【OUT】，【RST】 for the counters

## M nemonic and Function

| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Devices |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| OUT | Final logic <br> operation type <br> coil drive  | Device ：K，D |
| RST | Reset a bit device permanently OFF | Device：C |




Counter used for power cut retentive．
Even when power is cut，hold the current value and output contact＇s action status and reset status．

C0 carries on increase count for the $\mathrm{OFF} \rightarrow \mathrm{ON}$ of X 011 ．When reach the set value K10，output contact C 0 activates．Afterwards，even X011 turns from OFF to ON，counter＇s current value will not change，output contact keep on activating．
To clear this，let X010 be the activate status and reset the output contact．It＇s necessary to assign constant K or indirect data register＇s ID behind OUT instruction．

Programmi ng of high speed


I In the preceding example，when M 0 is ON ，carry on positive count with $\mathrm{OFF} \rightarrow \mathrm{ON}$ of X0．

I Counter＇s current value increase，when reach the set value（K or D），the output contact is reset．
I When M1 is ON，counter＇s C600 output contact is reset，counter＇s current value turns to be 0 ．

## 3-14. [END]

M nemonic and Function

| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Devices : None |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| END <br> (END) | Force the <br> current <br> program <br> to end | scan |$\quad$| Devices: None |
| :--- |



PLC repeatedly carry on input disposal, program executing and output disposal. If write END instruction at the end of the program, then the instructions behind END instruction won't be executed. If there's no END instruction in the program, the PLC executes the end step and then repeat executing the program from step 0 .
When debug, insert END in each program segment to check out each program's action.
Then, after confirm the correction of preceding block's action, delete END instruction.

Besides, the first execution of RUN begins with END instruction.

When executing END instruction, refresh monitor timer. (Check if scan cycle is a long timer.)

## 3-15.[GROUP],[GROUPE]

$M$ nemonic and Function

| Mnemonic | Function | Format and Device |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| GROUP | GROUP | GROUP |
|  |  | Devices: None |
| GROUPE | GROUP END | GROUPE |
|  |  | Devices: None |

## Statements

I GROUP and GROUPE should used in pairs.
I GROUP and GROUPE don't have practical meaning, they are used to optimize the program structure. So, add or delete these instructions doesn't effect the program's running;

I The using method of GROUP and GROUPE is similar with flow instructions; enter GROUP instruction at the beginning of group part; enter GROUPE instruction at the end of group part.


Generally, GROUP and GROUPE instruction can be programmed according to the group's function. Meantime, the programmed instructions can be FOLDED or UNFOLDED. To a redundant project, these two instructions are quite useful.

## 1，Contacts＇structure and step number

Even in the sequencial control circuit with the same action，it＇s also available to simple the program and save program＇s steps according to the contacts＇structure． General program principle is ：a）write the circuit with many serial contacts on the top ； b）write the circuit with many parallel contacts in the left．

## 2，Program＇s executing sequence

Handle the sequencial control program by【From top to bottom】and 【From left to right】
Sequencial control instructions also encode following this flow．

## 3，Dual output dual coil＇s activation and the solution

I If carry on coil＇s dual output（dual coil）in the sequencial control program，then the backward action is prior．
I Dual output（dual coil）doesn＇t go against the input rule at the program side．But as the preceding action is very complicate，please modify the program as in the following example．


There are other methods．E．g．jump instructions or step ladder．However，when use step ladder，if the main program＇s output coil is programmed，then the disposal method is the same with dual coil，please note this．

## 4 <br> Applied Instructions

In this chapter, we describe applied instruction's function of XC series PLC.

## 4-1 . Table of Applied Instructions

4-2 . Reading Method of Applied Instructions

4-3. Flow Instructions

4-4. Contactors Compare Instructions

4-5 . Move Instructions

4-6 . Arithmetic and Logic Operation Instructions

4-7. Loop and Shift Instructions

4-8 . Data Convert

4-9 . Floating Operation

4-10. Clock Operation

| Mnemonic | Function | L adder chart |  |  | Chapter |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Program Flow |  |  |  |  |  |
| CJ | Condition jump | $\square \longmapsto \quad$ CJ | Pn |  | 4-3-1 |
| CALL | Call subroutine | $\longmapsto \longmapsto$ CALL |  |  | 4-3-2 |
| SRET | Subroutine return | - SRET |  |  | 4-3-2 |
| STL | Flow start | STL Sn |  |  | 4-3-3 |
| STLE | Flow end | S 1. |  |  | 4-3-3 |
| SET | Open the assigned flow, close the current flow | S |  |  | 4-3-3 |
| ST | Open the assigned flow, not close the current flow | D |  |  | 4-3-3 |
| FOR | Start a FOR-NEXT loop | D |  |  | 4-3-4 |
| NEXT | End of a FOR-NEXT loop | D . |  |  | 4-3-4 |
| FEND | Main program END | D. |  |  | 4-3-5 |
| END | Program END | $\square \mathrm{END}$ |  |  | 4-3-5 |
| Data Compare |  |  |  |  |  |
| LD = | LD activates if $(\mathrm{S} 1)=(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | S . |  |  | 4-4-1 |
| LD > | LD activates if $(\mathrm{S} 1)>(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | D . |  |  | 4-4-1 |
| LD < | LD activates if $(\mathrm{S} 1)=<(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | D |  |  | 4-4-1 |
| LD < > | LD activates if (S1) $\neq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | D . |  |  | 4-4-1 |
| LD $<=$ | LD activates if $(\mathrm{S} 1) \leq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | D |  |  | 4-4-1 |
| LD > = | LD activates if (S1) $\geq$ ( S 2$)$ |    <br> LD > $=$ S1 S2 |  |  | 4-4-1 |
| AND $=$ | AND activates if $(\mathrm{S} 1)=(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |    <br>  AND $=$ S1 |  |  | 4-4-2 |




| SFTR | Bit shift right | $\longmapsto \longmapsto$ SFTR | S | D | n1 | n2 | 4-7-5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| WSFL | Word shift left | $\vdash \vdash$ WSFL | S | D | n1 | n2 | 4-7-6 |
| WSFR | Word shift right | いい WSFR | S | D | n1 | n2 | 4-7-7 |
| Data Convert |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| WTD | Single word integer converts to double word integer | $\longmapsto \longmapsto W T D$ |  | D |  |  | 4-8-1 |
| FLT | 16 bits integer converts to float point | $\longrightarrow \mapsto F \text { FLT }$ |  | D |  |  | 4-8-2 |
| DFLT | 32 bits integer converts to float point | $\longmapsto \longmapsto \text { DFLT }$ |  | D |  |  | 4-8-2 |
| FLTD | 64 bits integer converts to float point | $\longmapsto \vdash F$ FLTD |  | D |  |  | 4-8-2 |
| INT | Float point converts to integer | $\xrightarrow{\text { HINT }}$ |  | D |  |  | 4-8-3 |
| BIN | BCD converts to binary | $\longmapsto \longmapsto \mathrm{BIN}$ | S | D |  |  | 4-8-4 |
| BCD | Binary converts to BCD | $\longmapsto \vdash \mathrm{BCD}$ | S | D |  |  | 4-8-5 |
| ASCI | Hex. converts to ASCII | $\longmapsto \longmapsto \mathrm{ASCl}$ | S | D | n |  | 4-8-6 |
| HEX | ASCII converts to Hex. | $\longmapsto \longmapsto$ HEX | S | D | n |  | 4-8-7 |
| DECO | Coding | $\longmapsto \vdash$ DECO | S | D | n |  | 4-8-8 |
| ENCO | High bit coding | $\longmapsto \longmapsto$ ENCO | S | D | n |  | 4-8-9 |
| ENCOL | Low bit coding | $\longmapsto \vdash$ ENCOL | S | D | n |  | 4-8-10 |
| Float Point Operation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ECMP | Float compare | $\downarrow$ ECMP |  | S2 | D |  | 4-9-1 |
| EZCP | Float Zone compare | $\longmapsto \longmapsto E Z C P$ | 51 | 2 |  |  | 4-9-2 |
| EADD | Float Add | $\longmapsto \longmapsto$ EADD | S1 | S2 | D |  | 4-9-3 |
| ESUB | Float Subtract | $\longmapsto \vdash$ ESUB | S1 | S2 | D |  | 4-9-4 |


| EMUL | Float Multiplication | いЮEMUL | S1 | S2 | D | 4－9－5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| EDIV | Float division | いや EDIV | S1 | S2 | D | 4－9－6 |
| ESQR | Float Square Root | $\longmapsto \longmapsto E$ ESQR | S | D |  | 4－9－7 |
| SIN | Sine |  | S | D |  | 4－9－8 |
| COS | Cosine | $\downarrow \longmapsto \cos$ |  | D |  | 4－9－9 |
| TAN | Tangent | $\vdash \vdash$ TAN |  | D |  | 4－9－10 |
| ASIN | Floating Sine | $\|\longmapsto\|$ASIN S D |  |  |  | 4－9－11 |
| ACOS | Floating Cosine | $\longmapsto \vdash$ ACOS | S | D |  | 4－9－12 |
| ATAN | Floating Tangent | $\longmapsto \longmapsto$ ATAN | S | D |  | 4－9－13 |
| Clock Operation |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| TRD | Read RTC data | $\longmapsto \vdash$ TRD | D |  |  | 4－10－1 |
| TWR | Write RTC data | －や TWR | D |  |  | 4－10－2 |

## 4-2 . R eading M ethod of A pplied Instructions

In this manual, the applied instructions are described in the following manner.
1.Summary

| ADDITION [ADD] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | ADD | 32 bits | DADD |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF, Rising/Falling <br> edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2.Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the augend data or register | $16 \mathrm{bits} / 32 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| S2 | Specify the summand data or register | $16 \mathrm{bits} / 32 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| D | Specify the register to store the sum | $16 \mathrm{bits} / 32$ bits, BIN |

3.Suitable Soft Components

<32 bits instruction>

$($ D11D10 $)+($ D13D12 $) \rightarrow($ D15D14)

I The data contained within the two source devices are combined and total is stored in the specified
destination device. Each data's highest bit is the sign bit, 0 stands for positive, 1 stand for negative. All calculations are algebraic processed. $(5+(-8)=-3)$.
I If the result of a calculations is " 0 ", the " 0 ' flag acts. If the result exceeds 323,767 ( 16 bits limit) or $2,147,483,648$ ( 32 bits limit), the carry flag acts. ( refer to the next page). If the result exceeds $-323,768$ (16 bits limit) or $-2,147,483,648$ ( 32 bits limit ) , the borrow flag acts (Refer to the next page)
I When carry on 32 bits operation, word device's 16 bits are assigned, the device follow closely the preceding device's ID will be the high bits. To avoid ID repetition, we recommend you assign device's ID to be even ID.
I The same device may be used a source and a destination. If this is the case then the result changes after every scan cycle. Please note this point.

Related flag

| Flag | Name | Function |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| M8020 | Zero | ON : the calculate result is zero <br> OFF : the calculate result is not zero |
| M8021 | Borrow | ON : the calculate result is over 32767(16bits) or 2147483647(32bits) <br> OFF : the calculate result is not over 32767(16bits) or 2147483647(32bits) |
| M8022 | Carry | ON : the calculate result is over 32767(16bits) or 2147483647(32bits) <br> OFF : the calculate result is not over 32767(16bits) or 2147483647(32bits) |

## The related

 descriptionI The assignment of the data
The data register of XC series PLC is a single word (16 bit) data register, single word data only engross one data register which is assigned by single word object instruction. The disposal bound is: Dec. -327,68~327,67, Hex. 0000~FFFF.

Single word object instruction

$$
\begin{array}{|l|l|}
\hline \text { Instruction } & \mathrm{D}(\mathrm{NUM}) \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$

Double word ( 32 bit) engrosses two data register, it's composed by two consecutive data registers, the first one is assigned by double word object instruction. The dispose bound is: Dec. $-214,748,364,8 \sim 214,748,364,7$, Hex. 00000000~FFFFFFFF.


I The denote way of 32 bits instruction
If an instruction can not only be 16 bits but also be 32 bits, then the denote method for 32 bits instruction is to add a " $D$ " before 16 bits instruction.
E.g : ADD D0 D2 D4 denotes two 16 bits data adds ;

DADD D10 D12 D14 denotes two 32 bits data adds
※1: Flag after executing the instruction. Instructions without the direct flag will not display.
$\not{ }^{2}$ : S. Source operand, its content won't change after executing the instruction
※3: D. Destinate operand, its content changes with the execution of the instruction
※4 : Tell the instruction's basic action, using way, applied example, extend function, note items
etc.
4-3. Program F low Instructions

| Mnemonic | Instruction's name | Chapter |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| CJ | Condition Jump | $4-3-1$ |
| CALL | Call subroutine | $4-3-2$ |
| SRET | Subroutine return | $4-3-2$ |
| STL | Flow start | $4-3-3$ |
| STLE | Flow end | $4-3-3$ |
| SET | Open the assigned flow, close the current flow (flow <br> jump) | $4-3-3$ |
| ST | Open the assigned flow, not close the current flow (Open <br> the new flow) | $4-3-3$ |
| FOR | Start of a FOR-NEXT loop | $4-3-4$ |
| NEXT | End of a FOR-NEXT loop | $4-3-4$ |
| FEND | First End | $4-3-5$ |
| END | Program End | $4-3-5$ |

## 4-3-1 . Condition Jump [CJ ]

## 1.Summary

As used to run a part of program, CJ shorten the operation cycle and using the dual coil

| Condition Jump [CJ] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | CJ | 32 bits | - |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF coil | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2.Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Pn | Jump to the target (with pointer Nr.) P (P0~P9999) | Pointer's Nr. |

3.Suitable Soft Components


In the below graph, if X000 is "ON", jump from the first step to the next step behind P6 tag. If X000 "OFF", do not execute the jump construction;


I In the left graph, Y000 becomes to be dual coil output, but when $\mathrm{X} 000=\mathrm{OFF}$, X001 activates; when X000=ON, X005 activates

I CJ can't jump from one STL to another STL;
I After driving time T0~T640 and HSC C600~C640, if execute CJ, continue to work, the output activates.

## 4-3-2. Call subroutine [CALL] and Subroutine return [SRET]

## 1.Summary

Call the programs which need to be executed together, decrease the program's steps;

| Subroutine Call [CALL] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| 16 bits | CALL | 32 bits | - |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF, <br> Rising/Falling edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |  |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |
| Subroutine Return [SRET] | 32 bits | - |  |  |
| 16 bits | SRET | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |  |
| Execution <br> condition | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - |  |  |  |

2.Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Pn | Jump to the target (with pointer Nr.) P (P0~P9999) | Pointer's Nr. |


Description

## 4-3-3. Flow [SET].[ST] .[STL ].[STLE]

1, Summary
Instructions to specify the start, end, open, close of a flow;

| Open the specified flow, close the local flow [SET] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | SET | 32 bits | - |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF, <br> Rising/Falling edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |
| Open the specified flow, not close the local flow [ST] |  |  |  |
| 16 bits | ST | 32 bits | - |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> Rising/Falling edge | ON/OFF, <br> Moitablels <br> Model | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |
| Flow starts [STL] |  |  |  |
| 16 bits | STL | 32 bits | - |


| Execution <br> condition | - | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |
| Flow ends [STLE] | 32 bits | - |  |  |
| 16 bits | STLE | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |  |
| Execution <br> condition | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - |  |  |  |

2.operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Sn | Jump to the target flow S | Flow ID |

3.Suitable Soft Components

Bit

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| Sn |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |

## Description

I STL and STLE should be used in pairs. STL represents the start of a flow, STLE represents the end of a flow.
I After executing of SET Sxxx instruction, the flow specified by these instructions is ON.
I After executing RST Sxxx instruction, the specified flow is OFF.
I In flow S0, SET S1 close the current flow S0, open flow S1.
I In flow S0, ST S2 open the flow S2, but don't close flow S0.
I When flow turns from ON to be OFF, reset OUT, PLS, PLF, not accumulate timer etc. which belongs to the flow.
I ST instruction is usually used when a program needs to run more flows at the same time.
I After executing of SET Sxxx instruction, the pulse instructions will be closed (including one-segment, multi-segment, relative or absolute, return to the origin)


## 4-3-4. [FOR] and [NEXT]

## 1.Summary

Loop execute the program between FOR and NEXT with the specified times;

| Loop starts [FOR] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | FOR | 32 bits | - |
| Execution <br> condition | Rising/Falling edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |
| Loop ends [NEXT] | 32 bits | - |  |
| 16 bits | NEXTs | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF, <br> Rising/Falling edge | Software <br> requirement | - |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - |  |  |

2.Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Program's loop times between FOR~NEXT | 16 bits, BIN |

3.Suitable Soft Components


## Description

I FOR.NEXT instructions must be programmed as a pair. Nesting is allowed, and the nesting level is 8 .

I Between FOR/NEXT, LDP.LDF instructions are effective for one time. Every time when M0 turns from OFF to ON, and M1 turns from OFF to ON, [A] loop is executed 6 times.
I Every time if M0 turns from OFF to ON and M3 is ON , [B] loop is executed $5 \times 7=35$ times.
I If there are many loop times, the scan cycle will be prolonged. Monitor timer error may occur, please note this.
I If NEXT is before FOR, or no NEXT, or NEXT is behind FENG,END, or FOR and NEXT number is not equal, an error will occur.
I Between FOR~NEXT, CJ nesting is not allowed, also in one STL, FOR~NEXT must be programmed as a pair.


## 4-3-5. [FEND] and [END]

1.Summary

FEND means the main program ends, while END means program ends;

| main program ends [FEND] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Execution condition | - | Suitable Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware requirement | - | Software requirement | - |
| program ends [END] |  | Suitable Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Execution condition | - | Software requirement | - |
| Hardware requirement | - | $l$ |  |

2.Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| None | - | - |

3.Suitable Soft Components

None


Even though [FEND] instruction represents the end of the main program, if execute this instruction, the function is same with END. Execute the output/input disposal, monitor the refresh of the timer, return to the 0th step.


I If program the tag of CALL instruction behind FEND instruction, there must be SRET instruction. If the interrupt pointer program behind FEND instruction, there must be IRET instruction.
I After executing CALL instruction and before executing SRET instruction, if execute FEND instruction; or execute FEND instruction after executing FOR instruction and before executing NEXT, then an error will occur.
I In the condition of using many FEND instruction, please compile routine or subroutine between the last FEND instruction and END instruction.

## 4-4. Data compare function

| Mnemonic | Function | Chapter |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| LD = | LD activates when $(\mathrm{S} 1)=(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | 4-4-1 |
| LD > | LD activates when (S1) > (S2) | 4-4-1 |
| LD < | LD activates when (S1) < (S2) | 4-4-1 |
| LD < > | LD activates when (S1) $=$ (S2) | 4-4-1 |
| $\mathrm{LD}<=$ | LD activates when $(\mathrm{S} 1) \leq$ (S2) | 4-4-1 |
| LD > = | LD activates when (S1) $\geq$ (S2) | 4-4-1 |
| AND = | AND activates when (S1) = (S2) | 4-4-2 |
| AND > | AND activates when (S1) > (S2) | 4-4-2 |
| AND < | AND activates when (S1) < (S2) | 4-4-2 |
| AND < > | AND activates when (S1) $=$ (S2) | 4-4-2 |
| AND < = | AND activates when (S1) $\leq$ (S2) | 4-4-2 |
| AND > = | AND activates when (S1) $\geq$ (S2) | 4-4-2 |


| $\mathrm{OR}=$ | OR activates when $(\mathrm{S} 1)=(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $4-4-3$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\mathrm{OR}>$ | OR activates when $(\mathrm{S} 1)>(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $4-4-3$ |
| $\mathrm{OR}<$ | OR activates when $(\mathrm{S} 1)<(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $4-4-3$ |
| $\mathrm{OR}<>$ | OR activates when $(\mathrm{S} 1) \neq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $4-4-3$ |
| $\mathrm{OR}<=$ | OR activates when $(\mathrm{S} 1) \leq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $4-4-3$ |
| $\mathrm{OR}>=$ | OR activates when $(\mathrm{S} 1) \geq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $4-4-3$ |

## 4-4-1 . LD Compare[LD $\square$ ]

1. Summary
$\mathrm{LD} \square$ is the point compare instruction connected with the generatrix.

| LD Compare [LD $\square]$ |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | As below | 32 bits | As below |
| Execution <br> condition | - | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2.Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the Data (to be compared) or soft <br> component's address code | $16 / 32$ bits, BIN |
| S2 | Specify the comparand's value or soft <br> component's address code | $16 / 32$ bits, BIN |

3.Suitable soft components


| 16 bits instruction | 32 bits instruction | Activate Condition | Not Activate Condition |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\mathrm{LD}=$ | $\mathrm{DLD}=$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)=(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \neq \quad(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |
| $\mathrm{LD}>$ | $\mathrm{DLD}>$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)>\quad(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \leq \quad(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |


| $\mathrm{LD}<$ | DLD $<$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)<\quad(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \geq \quad(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\mathrm{LD}<>$ | DLD $<>$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \neq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)=(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |
| $\mathrm{LD}<=$ | DLD $<=$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \leq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)>(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |
| $\mathrm{LD}>=$ | DLD $>=$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \geq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)<(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |



I When the source data's highest bit (16 bits : b15, 32 bits : b31) is 1 , use the data as a negative.
I The comparison of 32 bits counter (C300~) must be 32 bits instruction. If assigned as a 16 bits instruction, it will lead the program error or operation error.

## 4-4-2 . AND C ompare[AND $\square$ ]

1.Summary

AND $\square:$ The compare instruction to serial connect with the other contactors.

| AND Compare [AND $\square$ ] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | As Below | 32 bits | As Below |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF coil | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2.Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the Data ( to be compared) or soft <br> component's address code | $16 / 32$ bit,BIN |
| S2 | Specify the comparand's value or soft <br> component's address code | $16 / 32$ bit,BIN |

3.suitable soft components


| 16 bits instruction | 32 bits instruction | Activate Condition | Not Activate Condition |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| AND $=$ | DAND $=$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)=(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \neq \quad(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |
| AND $>$ | DAND $>$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)>(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \leq \quad(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |
| AND $<$ | DAND $<$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)<(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \geq \quad(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |
| AND $<>$ | DAND $<>$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \neq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)=(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |
| AND $<=$ | DAND $<=$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \leq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)>\quad(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |
| AND $>=$ | DAND $>=$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \geq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)<(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |



| Noteltems | I When the source data's highest bit (16 bits : b15 , 32 bits : b31) is 1, <br> I <br> Ise the data as a negative. |
| :--- | :--- |
| The comparison of 32 bits counter (C300~) must be 32 bits instruction. <br> If assigned as a 16 bits instruction, it will lead the program error or <br> operation error. |  |

## 4-4-3. Parallel Compare [OR $\square$ ]

1. Summary

OR $\square$ The compare instruction to parallel connect with the other contactors

| Parallel Compare $[\mathrm{OR} \square$ ] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | As below | 32 bits | As below |
| Execution | - | Suitable | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |


| condition |  | Models |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the Data ( to be compared) or soft <br> component's address code | $16 / 32$ bit,BIN |
| S2 | Specify the comparand's value or soft <br> component's address code | $16 / 32$ bit,BIN |

3. suitable soft components


## Description

| 16 bits instruction | 32 bits instruction | Activate Condition | Not Activate Condition |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| OR $=$ | DOR $=$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)=(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \neq \quad(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |
| $\mathrm{OR}>$ | DOR $>$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)>(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \leq \quad(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |
| $\mathrm{OR}<$ | DOR $<$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)<(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \geq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |
| $\mathrm{OR}<>$ | DOR $<>$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \neq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)=(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |
| OR $<=$ | DOR $<=$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \leq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)>(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |
| OR $>=$ | DOR $>=$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1) \geq(\mathrm{S} 2)$ | $(\mathrm{S} 1)<(\mathrm{S} 2)$ |



| Note Items | I When the source data's highest bit (16 bits : b15 , 32 bits $:$ b31) is 1, <br> use the data as a negative. |
| :---: | :--- |
| The comparison of 32 bits counter (C300~) must be 32 bits instruction. <br> If assigned as a 16 bits instruction, it will lead the program error or <br> operation error. |  |

## 4-5 . Data M ove

| Mnemonic | Function | Chapter |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| CMP | Data compare | $4-5-1$ |
| ZCP | Data zone compare | $4-5-2$ |
| MOV | Move | $4-5-3$ |
| BMOV | Data block move | $4-5-4$ |
| PMOV | Data block move (with faster speed) | $4-5-5$ |
| FMOV | Fill move | $4-5-6$ |
| FWRT | FlashROM written | $4-5-7$ |
| MSET | Zone set | $4-5-8$ |
| ZRST | Zone reset | $4-5-9$ |
| SWAP | The high and low byte of the destinated <br> devices are exchanged | $4-5-10$ |
| XCH | Exchange | $4-5-11$ |

## 1. Summary

Compare the two specified Data, output the result.

| Data compare [CMP] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | CMP | 32 bits | DCMP |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF, <br> rising/falling edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the data (to be compared) or soft <br> component's address code | 16 bit,BIN |
| S | Specify the comparand's value or soft <br> component's address code | 16 bit,BIN |
| D | Specify the compare result's address code | bit |

3. Suitable soft component
Word

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
| S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | - | - | $\bullet$ | - | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |
| S | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |

Bit

| Oper <br> ands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| D |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |


| Description | xo |  | s1 |  |  | (s) | (D) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | CMP |  | D1 | D20 | N0 |
|  |  | M |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  | D2 | ON |  |
|  |  |  |  |  | D2 | ON |  |
|  |  | M |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  | D2 | av |  |

Even $\mathrm{X} 000=\mathrm{OFF}$ to stop ZCP instruction, M0~M2 will keep the original status
I Compare data S1. and S. output the three points' ON/OFF status (start with (D.) according to the value

I (D. (D. +1 , (D. +2 : the three point's on/off output according to the valve

## 4-5-2 . Data zone compare [ZCP]

1. Summary

Compare the two specify Data with the current data, output the result.

| Data Zone compare [ZCP] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | ZCP | 32 bits | DZCP |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the down-limit Data (of the compare <br> stand) or soft component's address code | 16 bit, BIN |
| S2 | Specify the Up-limit Data (of the compare stand) <br> or soft component's address code | 16 bit, BIN |
| S | Specify the current data or soft component's <br> address code | 16 bit, BIN |
| D | Specify the compare result's data or soft <br> component's address code | bit |

3.Suitable soft components

Word


Bit

| Oper <br> ands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |
| D |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |



Even X000=OFF stop ZCP instruction ,M0~M2 will keep the original status
I Compare S. data with and S1 (D. output the three point's ON/OFF status according to the zone size.
I D. D. +1 , D. +2 : the three point's ON/OFF output according to the result

## 4-5-3 . M OV [M OV]

1. Summary

Move the specified data to the other soft components

| MOV [MOV] |  |  |  | MOV |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | Software <br> requirement | - |  |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | DMOV |  |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Specify the source data or register's address code | $16 \mathrm{bit} / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| D | Specify the target soft component's address code | $16 \mathrm{bit} / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |

3. Suitable soft component

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S | - | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |



I Move the source data to the target
I When X000 is off, the data keeps same
। Convert constant K10 to be BIN code automatically
<read the counter's or time's current value>

( The current value of T 0$) \rightarrow(\mathrm{D} 20)$
The same as counter
< Move the 32bits data >

$(\mathrm{D} 1, \mathrm{D} 0) \rightarrow(\mathrm{D} 11, \mathrm{D} 10)$
(the current value of C 235$) \rightarrow(\mathrm{D} 21, \mathrm{D} 20)$
<indirectly specify the counter's ,time's set value>

| MOV | K10 | D20 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |

Please use DMOV when the value is 32 bits, such as MUL instruction, high speed counter...

## 1. Summary

Move the specified data block to

| Data block move [BMOV] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | BMOV | 32 bits | - |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF coil | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Specify the source data block or soft component <br> address code | 16 bits, BIN; bit |
| D | Specify the target soft components address code | 16 bits, BIN; bit |
| n | Specify the move data's number | 16 bits, BIN; |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
|  | D | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
|  | n | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |

Bit

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |
| S | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |
| D | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |

I Move the specified " n " data to the specified " n " soft components in the form block.

$\left.\begin{array}{|l|l|l|}\hline \text { D5 } & & \text { D10 } \\ \hline \text { D6 } & - & \text { D11 } \\ \hline \text { D7 } & - & \text { D12 } \\ \hline\end{array}\right\} \quad \mathrm{n}=3$

I As the following picture, when the data address overlapped, the instruction will do from 1 to 3 .

| X1 | BMOV | D10 | D9 | K3 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | B |  |  |  |
| X2 BMOV D10 D11 <br>  K3   |  |  |  |  |


| D10 | (1) | D9 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| D11 | (2) | D10 |  |
| D12 |  |  | D11 |


| D10 | (3) | - | D11 |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| D11 | $(2)$ |  | D12 |
| D12 |  |  | D13 |

## 1. Summary

Move the specified data block to the other soft components

| Data block mov[PMOV] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | PMOV | 32 bits | - |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF coil | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Specify the source data block or soft component <br> address code | 16 bits, BIN; bit |
| D | Specify the target soft components address code | 16 bits, BIN; bit |
| n | Specify the move data's number | 16 bits, BIN; |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands |  | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Bit |  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S |  | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
|  | D |  | - |  | - | - | - |  | $\bullet$ | - | - |  |  |  |
|  | n |  | - |  |  | $\bullet$ | - |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - |  |  |
|  | Oper |  |  |  |  | syste |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | ands | X | Y |  | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | S | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | - |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | D | $\bullet$ | - |  | - |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |



I Move the specifed " n " data to the specified " n " soft components in form of block



I The function of PMOV and BMOV is mostly the same, but the PMOV has the faster speed
I PMOV finish in one scan cycle, when executing PMOV, close all the interruptions
I Mistake many happen, if there is a repeat with source address and target address

## 4-5-6 . Fill M ove[FM OV]

## 1. Summary

Move the specified data block to the other soft components

| Fill Move [FMOV] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | FMOV | 32 bits | DFMOV |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models |
| Hardware <br> requirement | DFMOV need above V3.0 | Software <br> requirement | - |

## 2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Specify the source data block or soft component <br> address code | 16 bits, BIN; bit |
| D | Specify the target soft components address code | 16 bits, BIN; bit |
| n | Specify the move data's number | 16 bits, BIN; |

## 3. Suitable soft component

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
|  | n | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |



I Move K0 to D0~D9, copy a single data device to a range of destination device
I The data stored in the source device ( S ) is copied to every device within the destination range, The range is specified by a device head address (D) and a quantity of consecutive elements ( n ).
I If the specified number of destination devices ( $n$ ) exceeds the available space at the destination location, then only the available destination devices will be written to.
<32 bits instruction >


I Move D0.D1 to D10.D11:D12.D13:D14.D15.


## 4-5-7. FlashROM Write[FWRT]

## 1. Summary

Write the specified data to other soft components

| FlashROM Write [FWRT] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | FWRT | 32 bits | DFWRT |
| Execution <br> condition | rising/falling edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | The data write in the source or save in the soft <br> element | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| D | Write in target soft element | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| D1 | Write in target soft element start address | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| D2 | Write in data quantity | bit |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S | $\bullet$ | - |  | $\bullet$ | - | - | - | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D |  | - |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | D1 |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | D2 | - |  |  | $\bullet$ | - | - | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |



Write value in D0,D1 into FD0,FD1
Write value in D0,D1,D2 into FD0,FD1,FD2

[^1]$※ 2$ : Written of FWRT needs a long time, about 150 ms , so frequently operate this operate this operate operation is
recommended
$※ 3$ : The written time of Flshrom is about $1,000,000$ times. So we suggest using edge signal (LDP, LDF etc.) to trigger.
$※ 4$ : Frequently written of FlashROM

## 4-5-8 . Zone set [M SET]

1. Summary

Set or reset the soft element in certain range

| Multi-set [MSET] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | MSET.ZRST | 32 bits | - |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

## 2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D1 | Start soft element address | bit |
| D2 | End soft element address | bit |

3. Suitable soft components

| Bit | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |
|  | D1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | - |  |
|  | D2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ | - | - |  |


| Description | $\times$ |  | D1. | (D2.) | Zone set unit M10~M120 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | MSET | M10 | M120 |  |

I D1. (D2.) Are specified as the same type of soft units, and D1.) (D2.
I When (D1.) > (D2.) will not run Zone set, set M8004.M8067, and D8067=2。

## 4-5-9 . Zone reset [ZRST]

1. Summary

Reset the soft element in the certain range

| Multi-reset [ZRST] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | ZRST | 32 bits | - |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D1 | Start address of soft element | Bit:16 bits,BIN |
| D2 | End address of soft element | Bit:16 bits,BIN |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | D1 | - |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - |  |  |  |  |
|  | D2 | - |  |  |  | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |

Bit


I D1. (D2.) Are specified as the same type of soft units, and (D1.) $<$ D2.
I When (D1.) $>$ (D2.) only reset the soft unit specified in (D1.), and set M8004.M8067, D8067=2。

Other Reset Instruction

I As soft unit's separate reset instruction, RST instruction can be used to bit unit Y, M, S and word unit T, C, D
I As fill move for constant K0, 0 can be written into DX, DY, DM, DS, T, C, D.

## 1. Summary

Swap the high and low byte

| High and low byte swap [SWAP] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | SWAP | 32 bits | - |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | The address of the soft element | 16 bits: BIN |

## 3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S | - |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |



I Low 8 bits and high 8 bits change when it is 16 bits instruction.
I If the instruction is a consecutive executing instruction, each operation cycle should change.

## 4-5-11 . Exchange [XCH]

1. Summary

Exchange the data in two soft element

| Exchange $[\mathrm{XCH}]$ |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | XCH | 32 bits | DXCH |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D1 | The soft element address | 16 bits, BIN |
| D2 | The soft element address | 16 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft component

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | D1 | $\bullet$ |  |  | - | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - |  |  |  |
|  | D2 | $\bullet$ |  |  | - | $\bullet$ |  | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |



I The contents of the two destination devices D1 and D2 are swapped,
I When drive input X 0 is ON, each scan cycle should carry on data exchange, please note.
<32 bits instruction >


I 32 bits instruction [DXCH] swaps value composed by D10, D11 and the value composed by D20, D21.

4-6. Data Operation Instructions

| Mnemonic | Function | Chapter |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ADD | Addition | $4-6-1$ |
| SUB | Subtraction | $4-6-2$ |
| MUL | Multiplication | $4-6-3$ |
| DIV | Division | $4-6-4$ |
| INC | Increment | $4-6-5$ |
| DEC | Decrement | $4-6-5$ |
| MEAN | Mean | $4-6-6$ |
| WAND | Logic Word And | $4-6-7$ |
| WOR | Logic Word Or | $4-6-7$ |
| WXOR | Logic Exclusive Or | $4-6-7$ |
| CML | Compliment | $4-6-8$ |
| NEG | Negation | $4-6-9$ |

## 4-6-1 Addition [ADD]

## 1. Summary

Add two numbers and store the result

| Add [ADD] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | ADD | 32 bits | DADD |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | The number address | $16 \mathrm{bit} / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| S2 | The number address | $16 \mathrm{bit} / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| D | The result address | $16 \mathrm{bit} / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | - |  | - | - | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | - |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D | - |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |



I The data contained within the two source devices are combined and the total is stored in the specified destination device. Each data's highest bit is the sign bit, 0 stands for positive, 1 stands for negative. All calculations are algebraic processed. ( $5+(-8)=-3$ )
I If the result of a calculation is " 0 ", the " 0 " flag acts. If the result exceeds 323,767 (16 bits limit) or 2,147,483,647 (32 bits limit) , the carry flag acts. (refer to the next page) . If the result exceeds $-323,768$ ( 16 bits limit) or $-2,147,483,648$ ( 32 bits limit) , the borrow flag acts (Refer to the next page。
I When carry on 32 bits operation, word device's low 16 bits are assigned, the device following closely the preceding device's ID will be the high bits. To avoid ID repetition, we recommend you assign device's ID to be even ID.
I The same device may be used as a source and a destination. If this is the case then the result changes after every scan cycle. Please note this point.

## Related flag

Flag meaning

| Flag | Name | Function |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| M8020 | Zero | ON : the calculate result is zero <br> OFF : the calculate result is not zero |
| M8021 | Borrow | ON : the calculate result is less than $-32768(16$ bit $)$ or $-2147483648(32 \mathrm{bit})$ <br> OFF : the calculate result is over $-32768(16$ bit) or $-2147483648(32 \mathrm{bit})$ |
| M8022 | Carry | ON : the calculate result is over $32768(16$ bit) or $2147483648(32 \mathrm{bit})$ <br> OFF : the calculate result is less than $32768(16$ bit) or 2147483648(32bit) |

## 4-6-2 . Subtraction [SUB]

1. Summary

Sub two numbers, store the result

| Subtraction [SUB] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | SUB | 32 bits | DSUB |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2.Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | The number address | 16 bits $/ 32$ bits,BIN |
| S2 | The number address | 16 bits $/ 32$ bits,BIN |
| D | The result address | 16 bits $/ 32$ bits,BIN |

3.Suitable soft component

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ | - | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | - |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - |  |  |  |



I S1. appoint the soft unit's content, subtract the soft unit's content appointed by S2. in the format of algebra. The result will be stored in the soft unit appointed by D. $(5-(-8)=13)$
I The action of each flag, the appointment method of 32 bits operation's soft units are both the same with the preceding ADD instruction.
I The importance is: in the preceding program, if X 0 is $\mathrm{ON}, \mathrm{SUB}$ operation will be executed every scan cycle

The relationship of the flag's action and vale's positive/negative is shown below:


## 4-6-3. M ultiplication [M UL]

## 1. Summary

Multiply two numbers, store the result

| Multiplication [MUL] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | MUL | 32 bits | DMUL |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | The number address | 16 bits/32bits,BIN |
| S2 | The number address | 16 bits/32bits,BIN |
| D | The result address | 16 bits/32bits,BIN |

3. Suitable soft component

< 16 bits Operation>

| X0 | s1. |  | S2. | D. | BIN <br> (D0) |  | BIN |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | MUL | D0 | D2 | D4 | 16 bits |  | 16 bits | $\rightarrow$ | 32 bits |

I The contents of the two source devices are multiplied together and the result is stored at the destination device in the format of 32 bits. As in the upward chart: when (D0)=8, (D2)=9, (D5, D4) $=72$.
I The result's highest bit is the symbol bit: positive (0), negative (1).
I When be bit unit, it can carry on the bit appointment of K1~K8. When appoint K4, only the result's low 16 bits can be obtained.
<32 bits Operation >

| X1 | S1. |  | S2.) | D. | BIN | BIN |  | BIN |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | DMUL | D0 | D2 | D4 | (D1, D0) | (D3, D2) | $\rightarrow$ | (D7, D6, D5, D4) |
|  |  |  |  |  | 32 bits | 32 bits | $\rightarrow$ | 64 bits |

I When use 2 bits Operation ,the result is stored at the destination device in the format of 64 bits.
I Even use word device, 64 bits results can't be monitored at once.

## 4-6-4 . Division [DIV]

1. Summary

Divide two numbers and store the result

| Division [DIV] |  |  |  | DIV |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | DIV | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | Software <br> requirement | - |  |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - |  | DDIV |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | The number address | 16 bits / 32 bits, BIN |
| S2 | The number address | 16 bits /32 bits, BIN |


| D | The result address | 16 bits $/ 32$ bits, BIN |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |

3.Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \mathrm{K} / \mathrm{H} \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D | - |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |



I S1. appoints the device's content be the dividend, S2. appoints the device's content be the divisor, D. appoints the device and the next one to store the result and the remainder.
I In the above example, if input X 0 is ON , devision operation is executed every scan cycle.
<32 bits operation >


| Dividend |  | Divisor | Result | Remainder |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| BIN |  | BIN | BIN | BIN |
| (D1,D0) | $\div$ | (D3,D2) | (D5,D4) --- | (D7,D6) |
| 32 bits |  | 32 bits | 32 bits | 32 bits |

I The dividend is composed by the device appointed by S1. and the next one. The divisor is composed by the device appointed by s2and the next one. The result and the remainder are stored in the four sequential devices, the first one is appointed by D.
I If the value of the divisor is 0 , then an operation error is executed and the operation of the DIV instruction is cancelled

I The highest bit of the result and remainder is the symbol bit (positive:0, negative: 1 ). When any of the dividend or the divisor is negative, then the result will be negative. When the dividend is negative, then the remainder will be negative.

## 4-6-5 . Increment [INC] \& Decrement [DEC]

## 1. Summary

Increase or decrease the number

| Increment 1[INC] |  |  |  | 32 bits |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | INC | DINC |  |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | - | Software <br> requirement | - |
| Hardware <br> requirement | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |  |  |
| Increment 1[DEC] | 32 bits | DDEC |  |  |
| 16 bits | DEC | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | Software <br> requirement | - |  |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - |  |  |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D | The number address | 16 bits / 32bits,BIN |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Constant | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | K/H | ID | QD |
|  | D | $\bullet$ |  |  | - | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |


< Increment [INC]>


I On every execution of the instruction the device specified as the destination D. has its current value incremented (increased) by a value of 1 .
I In 16 bits operation, when $+32,767$ is reached, the next increment will write $-32,767$ to the destination device. In this case, there's no additional flag to identify this change in the counted value.


I On every execution of the instruction the device specified as the destination (D. has its current value decremented (decreased) by a value of 1 .
I When $-32,768$ or $-2,147,483,648$ is reached, the next decrement will write $+32,767$ or $+2,147,483,647$ to the destination device.

## 4-6-6 . M ean [M EAN]

1. Summary

Get the mean value of numbers

| Mean [MEAN] |  |  |  | 32 bits |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | DMEAN | 16 bits | MEAN | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |  |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | The head address of the numbers | 16 bits, BIN |
| D | The mean result address | 16 bits, BIN |
| n | The number quantity | 16 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components


I The value of all the devices within the source range is summed and then divided by the number of devices summed, i.e. n.. This generates an integer mean value which is stored in the destination device (D) The remainder of the calculated mean is ignored.
I If the value of n is specified outside the stated range (1 to 64) an error is generated.

4-6-7 . Logic A ND [WAND] , Logic OR [W OR ], Logic Exclusive OR [W XOR ]

## 1. Summary

Do logic AND, OR, XOR for numbers

| Logic AND [WAND] |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 16 bits | WAND | 32 bits | DWAND |
| Execution condition |  | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware requirement | - | Software requirement | - |
| Logic OR[WOR] |  |  |  |
| 16 bits | WOR | 32 bits | DWOR |
| Execution condition | Normally rising/falling edge $\quad$ ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware requirement | - | Software requirement | - |
| Logic Exclusive OR [WXOR] |  |  |  |
| 16 bits | WXOR | 32 bits | DWXOR |
| Execution condition | Normally rising/falling edge $\quad$ ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware requirement | - | Software requirement | - |

## 2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | The soft element address | $16 \mathrm{bit} / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| S2 | The soft element address | $16 \mathrm{bit} / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| D | The result address | $16 \mathrm{bit} / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
|  | D | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |


| < Execute logic AND operation with each bit>

< Execute logic OR operation with each bit >

< Execute logic Exclusive OR operation with each bit >


If use this instruction along with CML instruction, XOR NOT operation could also be executed.


## 1. Summary

Converse the phase of the numbers

| Converse [CML] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | CML | 32 bits | DCML |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Source number address | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| D | Result address | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components


Y17
$\begin{array}{llll}\mathrm{Y} 7 & \mathrm{Y} 6 & \mathrm{Y} 5 & \mathrm{Y} 4\end{array}$
I Each data bit in the source device is inverted $(1 \rightarrow 0,0 \rightarrow 1)$ and sent to the destination device. If use constant K in the source device, it can be auto convert to be binary.
I It's available when you want to inverted output the PLC's output
< Reading of inverted input >


The sequential control instruction in the left could be denoted by the following CML instruction.


## 4-6-9 . Negative [NE G]

1. Summary

Get the negative number

| Negative [NEG] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | NEG | 32 bits | DNEG |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D | The source number address | 16 bits/ bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components


I The bit format of the selected device is inverted, I.e. any occurrence of a " 1 ' becomes a " 0 " and any occurrence of " 0 " becomes " 1 ", when this is complete, a further binary 1 is added to the bit format. The result is the total logic sigh change of the selected devices contents.

## 4-7. Shift Instructions

| Mnemonic | Function | Chapter |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| SHL | Arithmetic shift left | $4-7-1$ |
| SHR | Arithmetic shift right | $4-7-1$ |
| LSL | Logic shift left | $4-7-2$ |
| LSR | Logic shift right | $4-7-2$ |
| ROL | Rotation left | $4-7-3$ |
| ROR | Rotation right | $4-7-3$ |
| SFTL | Bit shift left | $4-7-4$ |
| SFTR | Bit shift right | $4-7-5$ |
| WSFL | Word shift left | $4-7-6$ |
| WSFR | Word shift right | $4-7-7$ |

## 4-7-1 . A rithmetic shift left [SHL ], Arithmetic shift right [SHR]

## 1. Summary

Do arithmetic shift left/right for the numbers

| Arithmetic shift left [SHL] |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 16 bits | SHL |  | 32 bits | DSHL |
| Execution condition | Normally rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware requirement | - |  | Software requirement | - |
| Arithmetic shift right [SHR] |  |  |  |  |
| 16 bits | SHR |  | 32 bits | DSHR |
| Execution condition | Normally rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware requirement | - |  | Software requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D | The source data address | $16 \mathrm{bit} / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| n | Shift left or right times | $16 \mathrm{bit} / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |

3. Suitable soft components


I After once execution, the low bit is filled in 0, the final bit is stored in carry flag.
I After once execution, the high bit is same with the bit before shifting, the final bit is stored in carry flag.
< Arithmetic shift left >
< Arithmetic shift right >




## 4-7-2 . L ogic shift left [LSL], Logic shift right [LSR]

## 1. Summary

Do logic shift right/left for the numbers

| Logic shift left [LSL] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | LSL | 32 bits | DLSL |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | - | Software <br> requirement | - |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |  |
| Logic shift right [LSR] | 32 bits | DLSR |  |  |
| 16 bits | LSR | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | Software <br> requirement | - |  |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - |  |  |  |

## 2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D | Source data address | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| n | Arithmetic shift left/right times | 16 bits/32bits, BIN |

## 3. Suitable soft components




I After once execution, the low bit is filled in 0 , the final bit is stored in carry flag.
I LSL meaning and operation are the same as SHL.
I After once execution, the high bit is same with the bit before shifting, the final bit is stored in carry flag。

I LSR and SHR is different, LSR add 0 in high bit when moving, SHR all bits are moved.
< Logic shift left >

< Logic shift right >


## 4-7-3. Rotation shift left [R OL ] , Rotation shift right [R OR ]

1. Summary

Continue and cycle shift left or right

| Rotation shift left [ROL] |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 16 bits | ROL |  | 32 bits | DROL |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware requirement | - |  | Software requirement | - |
| Rotation shift right [ROR] |  |  |  |  |
| 16 bits | ROR |  | 32 bits | DROR |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware requirement | - |  | Software requirement | - |
| 2. Operands |  |  |  |  |
| Operands | Function |  |  | Data Type |


| D | Source data address | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| n | Shift right or left times | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | D | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
|  | n |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |



I The bit format of the destination device is rotated $n$ bit places to the left on every operation of the instruction.

## < Rotation shift left >



## 4-7-4 . Bit shift left [SFTL]

## 1. Summary

Bit shift left

| Bit shift left [SFTL] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | SFTL | 32 bits | DSFTL |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Types |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Source soft element head address | bit |
| D | Target soft element head address | bit |


| n 1 | Source data quantity | 16 bits $/ 32$ bits, BIN |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| n 2 | Shift left times | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components
Word

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
| n1 | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
| n2 | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |

Bit

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| S | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
| D |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |

I The instruction copies $n 2$ source devices to a bit stack of length n1. For every new addition of n 2 bits, the existing data within the bit stack is shifted n 2 bits to the left/right. Any bit data moving to the position exceeding the n1 limit is diverted to an overflow area.
I In every scan cycle, loop shift left action will be executed


## 4-7-5 . Bit shift right [SFTR]

## 1. Summary

Bit shift right

| Bit shift right [SFTR] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | SFTR | 32 bits | DSFTR |
| Execution | rising/falling edge | Suitable | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |


| condition |  | Models |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Source soft element head address | bit |
| D | Target soft element head address | bit |
| n1 | Source data quantity | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| n2 | Shift right times | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Constant | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | K/H | ID | QD |
|  | n1 | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | n2 | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
| Bit | Operands |  | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  | X | Y | M | S | T | C |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | S |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | D |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |

I The instruction copies n 2 source devices to a bit stack of length n1. For every new addition of n 2 bits, the existing data within the bit stack is shifted n 2 bits to the left/right. Any bit data moving to the position exceeding the n 1 limit is diverted to an overflow area.
I In every scan cycle, loop shift right action will be executed

(1) M 3~M 0 $\rightarrow$ Overflow
(2) $\mathrm{M} 7 \sim \mathrm{M} 4 \rightarrow \mathrm{M} 3 \sim \mathrm{M} 0$
(3) $\mathrm{M} 11 \sim \mathrm{M} 8 \rightarrow \mathrm{M} 7 \sim \mathrm{M} 4$
(4) $\mathrm{M} 15 \sim \mathrm{M} 12 \rightarrow \mathrm{M} 11 \sim \mathrm{M} 8$
(5) $\mathrm{X} 3 \sim \mathrm{X} 0 \rightarrow \mathrm{M} 15 \sim \mathrm{M} 12$


## 4-7-6. W ord shift left [WSFL]

## 1. Summary

Word shift left

| Word shift left [ [WSFL] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | WSFL | 32 bits | - |
| Execution <br> condition | rising/falling edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Source soft element head address | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| D | Target soft element head address | 16 bits /32 bits, BIN |
| n1 | Source data quantity | 16 bits /32 bits, BIN |
| n2 | Word shift left times | 16 bits /32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Constant <br> K/H | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
|  | D | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
|  | n1 | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | n2 | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |

I The instruction copies n 2 source devices to a word stack of length n 1 . For each addition of n 2 words, the existing data within the word stack is shifted n 2 words to the left. Any word data moving to a position exceeding the n 1 limit is diverted to an overflow area.

I In every scan cycle, loop shift left action will be executed.
(1) D25~D22 $\rightarrow$ Overflow
(2) $\mathrm{D} 21 \sim \mathrm{D} 18 \rightarrow \mathrm{D} 25 \sim \mathrm{D} 22$
(3) $\mathrm{D} 17 \sim \mathrm{D} 14 \rightarrow \mathrm{D} 21 \sim \mathrm{D} 18$
(4) $\mathrm{D} 13 \sim \mathrm{D} 10 \rightarrow \mathrm{D} 17 \sim \mathrm{D} 14$
(5) $\mathrm{D} 3 \sim \mathrm{D} 0 \rightarrow \mathrm{D} 13 \sim \mathrm{D} 10$


## 4-7-7 . W ord shift right[W SFR]

## 1. Summary

Word shift right

| Word shift right [WSFR] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | WSFR | 32 bits | - |
| Execution <br> condition | rising/falling edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Source soft element head address | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| D | Target soft element head address | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| n1 | Source data quantity | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| n2 | Shift right times | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components

Word

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Constant | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | K/H | ID | QD |
| S | $\bullet$ | - |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - |  |  |  |
| D | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
| n1 | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
| n2 | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |

I The instruction copies n 2 source devices to a word stack of length n1. For each addition of n 2 words, the existing data within the word stack is shifted n2 words to the right. Any word data moving to a position exceeding the n 1 limit is diverted to an overflow area.

I In every scan cycle, loop shift right action will be executed


## 4-8 . Data Convert

| Mnemonic | Function | Chapter |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| WTD | Single word integer converts to <br> double word integer | $4-8-1$ |
| FLT | 16 bits integer converts to float <br> point | $4-8-2$ |
| DFLT | 32 bits integer converts to float <br> point | $4-8-2$ |
| FLTD | 64 bits integer converts to float <br> point | $4-8-2$ |
| INT | Float point converts to integer | $4-8-3$ |
| BIN | BCD convert to binary | $4-8-4$ |
| BCD | Binary converts to BCD | $4-8-5$ |
| ASCI | Hex. converts to ASCII | $4-8-6$ |
| HEX | ASCII converts to Hex. | $4-8-7$ |
| DECO | Coding | $4-8-8$ |
| ENCO | High bit coding | $4-8-9$ |
| ENCOL | Low bit coding | $4-8-10$ |

1. Summary

| Single word integer converts to double word integer [WTD] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | WTD | 32 bits | - |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Source soft element address | 16 bits, BIN |
| D | Target soft element address | 32 bits, BIN |

3.Suitable soft components


I When single word D0 is positive integer, after executing this instruction, the high bit of double word D10 is 0 .
I When single word D0 is negative integer, after executing this instruction, the high bit of double word D10 is 1 .

1. Summary

| 16 bits integer converts to float point [FLT] |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | FLT | 32 bits | DFLT | 64 bits | FLTD |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |  |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Source soft element address | 16 bits/32 bits/64 bits,BIN |
| D | Target soft element address | 32 bits/64 bits,BIN |

3. Suitable soft components

$(\mathrm{D} 11, \mathrm{D} 10) \rightarrow \quad(\mathrm{D} 13, \mathrm{D} 12)$
BIN integer Binary float point
<64 bits>

$\underset{\text { BIN integer }}{\text { (D13,D12,D11,D10) }} \rightarrow$

I Convert BIN integer to binary float point. As the constant K , H will auto convert by the float operation instruction, so this FLT instruction can't be used.
I The instruction is contrary to INT instruction

## 4-8-3 . Float point conver ts to integer [INT]

1. Summary

| Float point converts to integer [INT] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | INT | 32 bits | DINT |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Source soft element address | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| D | Target soft element address | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components

<32 bits>

| X0 | (s.) |  |  | (D11,D10) <br> Binary Float | $\begin{array}{ll} \rightarrow \quad & (\mathrm{D} 20, \mathrm{D} 21) \\ & \text { BIN integer } \end{array}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | DINT | D10 | D20 |  |  |  |

I The binary source number is converted into a BIN integer and stored at the destination device. Abandon the value behind the decimal point.
I This instruction is contrary to FLT instruction.
I When the result is 0 , the flag bit is ON
When converting, less than 1 and abandon it, zero flag is ON.
The result is over below data, the carry flag is ON.
16 bits operation: $-32,768 \sim 32,767$
32 bits operation: $-2,147,483,648 \sim 2,147,483,647$

## 4-8-4 . BCD convert to binary [BIN]

1. Summary

| BCD convert to binary [BIN] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | BIN | 32 bits | - |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Source soft element address | BCD |
| D | Target soft element address | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components


I When source data is not BCD code, M8067 (Operation error), M8004 (error occurs)
I As constant K automatically converts to binary, so it's not suitable for this instruction.

1. Summary

| Binary convert to $\mathrm{BCD}[\mathrm{BCD}]$ |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | BCD | 32 bits | - |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

## 2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Source soft element address | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| D | Target soft element address | BCD code |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
|  | D | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |



I This instruction can be used to output data directly to a seven-segment display.

1. Summary

| Hex. convert to ASCII [ASCI] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | ASCI | 32 bits | - |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Source soft element address | 2 bits, HEX |
| D | Target soft element address | ASCII code |
| n | Transform character quantity | 16 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components


Convert each bit of source's (S) Hex. format data to be ASCII code, move separately to the high 8 bits and low 8 bits of destination (D). The convert alphanumeric number is assigned with n .
D. is low 8 bits, high 8 bits, store ASCII data.

The convert result is this

| $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{n} \\ & \mathrm{D} \end{aligned}$ | K1 | K2 | K3 | K4 | K5 | K6 | K7 | K8 | K9 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| D200 down | [C] | [B] | [A] | [0] | [4] | [3] | [2] | [1] | [8] |
| D200 up |  | [C] | [B] | [A] | [0] | [4] | [3] | [2] | [1] |
| D201 down |  |  | [C] | [B] | [A] | [0] | [4] | [3] | [2] |
| D201 up |  |  |  | [C] | [B] | [A] | [0] | [4] | [3] |
| D202 down |  |  |  |  | [C] | [B] | [A] | [0] | [4] |
| D202 up |  |  |  |  |  | [C] | [B] | [A] | [0] |
| D203 down |  |  |  |  |  |  | [C] | [B] | [A] |

Assign start device :
(D100) $=0 \mathrm{ABCH}$

| D203 up |  | $[\mathrm{C}]$ | $[\mathrm{B}]$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D204 down |  | $[\mathrm{C}]$ |  |

$(D 101)=1234 \mathrm{H}$
(D102) $=5678 \mathrm{H}$
$[0]=30 \mathrm{H} \quad[1]=31 \mathrm{H}$
$[5]=35 \mathrm{H} \quad[\mathrm{A}]=41 \mathrm{H}$
$[2]=32 \mathrm{H} \quad[6]=36 \mathrm{H}$
$[\mathrm{B}]=42 \mathrm{H} \quad[3]=33 \mathrm{H}$
$[7]=37 \mathrm{H} \quad[\mathrm{C}]=43 \mathrm{H}$
$[4]=34 \mathrm{H} \quad[8]=38 \mathrm{H}$

## 4-8-7 . ASCII convert to Hex.[HEX]

1. Summary

| ASCII converts to Hex. [HEX] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | HEX | 32 bits | - |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Date type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Source soft element address | ASCII |
| D | Target soft element address | 2 bits, HEX |
| n | Character quantity | 16 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
|  | D | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
|  | n |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |



Convert the high and low 8 bits in source s. to HEX data. Move 4 bits every time to destination (D. . The convert alphanumeric number is assigned by n .

The convert of the upward program is the following :

| $(\mathrm{S})$ | ASCII <br> Code | HEX <br> Convert |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D200 down | 30 H | 0 |
| D200 up | 41 H | A |
| D201 down | 42 H | B |
| D201 up | 43 H | C |
| D202 down | 31 H | 1 |
| D202 up | 32 H | 2 |
| D203 down | 33 H | 3 |
| D203 up | 34 H | 4 |
| D204 down | 35 H | 5 |


| $\mathrm{n} \quad$ (D ) | D102 | D101 | D100 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Not change to be 0 |  | OH |
| 2 |  |  | OAH |
| 3 |  |  | OABH |
| 4 |  |  | 0ABCH |
| 5 |  | OH | ABC1H |
| 6 |  | OAH | BC12H |
| 7 |  | OABH | C 123 H |
| 8 |  | 0ABCH | 1234H |
| 9 | OH | ABC1H | 2345H |

$\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{k} 4$



## 4-8-8 . Coding [DECO]

1. Summary

Transform the ASCII code to Hex numbers.

| Coding [DECO] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | DECO | s | - |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Source soft element address | ASCII |
| D | Target soft element address | 2 bits HEX |
| $n$ | The coding soft element quantity | 16 bits, BIN |

2. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\frac{\text { Constant }}{}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S | - | $\bullet$ |  | - | - | - | - | $\bullet$ | - |  |  |  |
|  | n |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |

Bit

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| D | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |



I The source address is $1+2=3$, so starts from M10, the number 3 bit (M13) is 1 . If the source are all $0, \mathrm{M} 10$ is 1 .
I When $n=0$, no operation, beyond $n=0 \sim 16$, don't execute the instruction.
I When $\mathrm{n}=16$, if coding command (D. is soft unit, it's point is $2^{\wedge} 16=65536$ 。
I When drive input is OFF, instructions are not executed, the activate coding output keep on activate.


I Low $n$ bits $(\mathrm{n} \leq 4)$ of source address is decoded to target address. $\mathrm{n} \leq 3$, the high bit of target address all become 0 .
I When $n=0$, no operation, beyond $n=0 \sim 14$, don't execute the instruction.

## 4-8-9 . High bit coding [ENCO]

## 1. Summary

Transform the ASCII code to hex numbers

| High bit coding [ENCO] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | ENCO | 32 bits | - |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | data address need coding | 16 bits, BIN; bit |
| D | Coding result address | 16 bits, BIN |
| n | soft element quantity to save result | 16 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components




All be 0
<When s. is word device > $\mathrm{n} \leq 4$


All be 0

I If many bits in the source ID are 1, ignore the low bits. If source ID are all 0 , don't execute the instructions.
I When drive input is OFF, the instruction is not executed, encode output don't change.
I When $\mathrm{n}=8$, if encode instruction's " S " is bit unit, it's point number is $2 \wedge 8=256$

## 4-8-10 . Low bit coding [ENCOL]

## 1. Summary

Transform the ASCII to hex numbers.

| Low bit coding [ENCOL] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | ENCOL | 32 bits | - |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Soft element address need coding | 16bit,BIN ; bit |
| D | Soft element address to save coding result | 16bit,BIN |
| $n$ | The soft element quantity to save result | 16bit,BIN |

3. Suitable soft components

Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Constant |  | Module |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | K/H | $\mathbb{D}$ | QD |  |
| S | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |
| D | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |
| n |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |

Bit

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| S | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |

Description
<if s. is bit device > $\mathrm{n} \leq 16$
Description


All be 0
<if s. is word device> $\mathrm{n} \leq 4$


All be 0

I If many bits in the source ID are 1 , ignore the high bits. If source ID are all 0 , don't execute the instructions。
I When drive input is OFF, the instruction is not executed, encode output don't change
I When $n=8$, if encode instruction's s. is bit unit, it's point number is $2^{\wedge} 8=256$

| Mnemonic | Function | Chapter |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ECMP | Float Compare | $4-9-1$ |
| EZCP | Float Zone Compare | $4-9-2$ |
| EADD | Float Add | $4-9-3$ |
| ESUB | Float Subtract | $4-9-4$ |
| EMUL | Float Multiplication | $4-9-5$ |
| EDIV | Float Division | $4-9-6$ |
| ESQR | Float Square Root | $4-9-7$ |
| SIN | Sine | $4-9-8$ |
| COS | Cosine | $4-9-9$ |
| TAN | Tangent | $4-9-10$ |
| ASIN | ASIN | $4-9-11$ |
| ACOS | ACOS | $4-9-12$ |
| ATAN | ATAN | $4-9-13$ |

1. Summary

| Float Compare [ECMP] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | - | 32 bits | ECMP |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Soft element address need compare | 32 bits, BIN |
| S2 | Soft element address need compare | 32 bits, BIN |
| D | Compare result | bit |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |

Bit

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| D |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |


(D11,D10) : (D21,D20) $\rightarrow$ M0,M1,M2
Binary Floating Binary Floating


The status of the destination device will be kept even if the ECMP instruction is deactivated.

I The binary float data of S1 is compared to S2. The result is indicated by 3 bit devices specified with the head address entered as D

I If a constant K or H used as source data, the value is converted to floating point before the addition operation.

$|$| X0 | ECMP | K500 | D100 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| M10 |  |  |  |


| (K500) : |
| :--- |
| (D101, D100) $\rightarrow$ M10,M11,M12 |
| Binary converts |
| to floating |

## 4-9-2 . Float Zone Compare[EZCP]

1. Summary

| Float Zone Compare [EZCP] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | - | 32 bits | EZCP |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Soft element address need compare | 32 bits, BIN |
| S2 | Upper limit of compare data | 32 bits, BIN |
| S3 | Lower limit of compare data | 32 bits, BIN |
| D | The compare result soft element address | bit |

3.Suitable soft components
Word

| Operands |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Constant |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Module |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | K/H | $\mathbb{D}$ | QD |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| S3 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Bit

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| D |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |

Compare a float range with a float value.


The status of the destination device will be kept even if the EZCP instruction is deactivated.

I The data of S1 is compared to the data of S2. The result is indicated by 3 bit devices specified with the head address entered as D.
I If a constant K or H used as source data, the value is converted to floating point before the addition operation.


Please set $\mathrm{S} 1<\mathrm{S} 2$, when $\mathrm{S} 2>\mathrm{S} 1$, see S 2 as the same with S 1 and compare them

1. Summary

| Float Add [EADD] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | - | 32 bits | EADD |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Soft element address need to add | 32 bits, BIN |
| S2 | Soft element address need to add | 32 bits, BIN |
| D | Result address | 32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components


| $(\mathrm{D} 11, \mathrm{D} 10)$ | + | $(\mathrm{D} 21, \mathrm{D} 20)$ | $\rightarrow$ |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Binary Floating |  | Binary Floating | Binary Floating |

I The floating point values stored in the source devices S1 and S2 are algebraically added and the result stored in the destination device $D$.
I If a constant K or H used as source data, the value is converted to floating point before the addition operation.


I The same device may be used as a source and as the destination. If this is the case then, on continuous operation of the EADD instruction, the result of the previous operation will be used as a new source value and a new result calculated. This will happen every program scan unless the pulse modifier or an interlock program is used.

1. Summary

| Float Sub [ESUB] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | - | 32 bits | ESUB |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Soft element address need to subtract | 32 bits, BIN |
| S2 | Soft element address need to subtract | 32 bits, BIN |
| D | Result address | 32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | - |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  | - | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |



I The floating point value of S2 is subtracted from the floating point value of S1 and the result stored in destination device D .
I If a constant K or H used as source data, the value is converted to floating point before the addition operation.


I The same device may be used as a source and as the destination. If this is the case then, on continuous operation of the EADD instruction, the result of the previous operation will be used as a new source value and a new result calculated. This will happen every program scan unless the pulse modifier or an interlock program is used.

1. Summary

| Float Multiply [EMUL] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | - | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | EMUL |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | Software <br> requirement | - |  |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - |  |  |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Soft element address need to multiply | 32 bits, BIN |
| S2 | Soft element address need to multiply | 32 bits, BIN |
| D | Result address | 32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components


$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
(\mathrm{D} 11, \mathrm{D} 10) & \times & (\mathrm{D} 21, \mathrm{D} 20) \rightarrow
\end{array}(\mathrm{D} 51, \mathrm{D} 50)
$$

I The floating value of $S 1$ is multiplied with the floating value point value of $S 2$. The result of the multiplication is stored at D as a floating value
I If a constant K or H used as source data, the value is converted to floating point before the addition operation.


| $(\mathrm{K} 100)$ | $(\mathrm{D} 101, \mathrm{D} 100)$ | $\rightarrow$ | $(\mathrm{D} 111, \mathrm{D} 110)$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Binary converts to Floating | Binary Floating | Binary Floating |  |

1. Summary

| Float Divide [EDIV] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | - | 32 bits | EDIV |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Soft element address need to divide | 32 bits, BIN |
| S2 | Soft element address need to divide | 32 bits, BIN |
| D | Result address | 32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components


I The floating point value of S1 is divided by the floating point value of S2.
The result of the division is stored in D as a floating point value. No remainder is calculated.
I If a constant K or H used as source data, the value is converted to floating point before the addition operation


If S 2 is 0 , the calculate is error, the instruction can not work

1. Summary

| Float Square Root [ESQR] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | - | 32 bits | ESQR |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | The soft element address need to do square root | 32 bits, BIN |
| D | The result address | 32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components


I A square root is performed on the floating point value in $S$ the result is stored in $D$
I If a constant K or H used as source data, the value is converted to floating point before the addition operation.


I When the result is zero, zero flag activates.
I Only when the source data is positive will the operation be effective. If $S$ is negative then an error occurs and error flag M8067 is set ON, the instruction can't be executed.

1. Summary

| Float Sine[SIN] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | - | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | Software <br> requirement | - |  |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - |  |  |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | The soft element address need to do sine | 32 bits, BIN |
| D | The result address | 32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components


| (D51,D50) | $\rightarrow$ | $($ D61,D60)SIN |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Binary Floating |  | Binary Floating |

I This instruction performs the mathematical SIN operation on the floating point value in $S$ (angle RAD). The result is stored in D.


1. Summary

| Float Cosine[COS] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | - | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | Software <br> requirement | - |  |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - |  |  |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Soft element address need to do cos | 32 bits, BIN |
| D | Result address | 32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components


$$
\begin{array}{ll}
(\mathrm{D} 51, \mathrm{D} 50) \mathrm{RAD} \rightarrow & (\mathrm{D} 61, \mathrm{D} 60) \mathrm{COS} \\
\text { Binary Floating } & \text { Binary Floating }
\end{array}
$$

I This instruction performs the mathematical COS operation on the floating point value in $S$ (angle RAD). The result is stored in $D$ 。


1. Summary

| TAN [TAN] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | - | 32 bits | TAN |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Soft element address need to do tan | 32bit,BIN |
| D | Result address | 32bit,BIN |

3. Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S | $\bullet$ | - |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |


|  |  |  | (s. (D. |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Description | $\downarrow$ | TAN | D50 | D60 |

(D51,D50)RAD $\rightarrow \quad$| (D61,D60)TAN |
| ---: |
| Binary Floating |$\quad$ Binary Floating

I This instruction performs the mathematical TAN operation on the floating point value in S. The result is stored in D.

RAD value (anglex $\pi / 180$ )


Assign the binary floating value

TAN value

D. |  | D61 |
| :--- | :--- |

Binary Floating

1. Summary

| ASIN [ASIN] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | - | 32 bits | ASIN |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | Onitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |  |
| Hardware <br> requirement | V3.0 and above version | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Soft element address need to do arcsin | 32 bits, BIN |
| D | Result address | 32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components


$$
\begin{array}{ll}
(\mathrm{D} 51, \mathrm{D} 50) \mathrm{ASIN} \rightarrow & \text { (D61,D60)RAD } \\
\text { Binary Floating } & \text { Binary Floating }
\end{array}
$$

I This instruction performs the mathematical ASIN operation on the floating point value in S. The result is stored in D.


ASIN value
Binary Floating
D. $\quad$ D61 $\quad$ D60

RAD value (anglex $\pi / 180$ )
Assign the binary floating value

1. Summary

| ACOS [ACOS] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | - | 32 bits | ACOS |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | V3.0 and above | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Soft element address need to do arccos | 32 bits, BIN |
| D | Result address | 32 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable soft components


| $($ D51,D50)ACOS $\rightarrow$ | $(D 61, D 60) R A D$ |
| :--- | :---: |
| Binary Floating | Binary Floating |

I Calculate the arcos value(radian), save the result in the target address
S.

| D51 | D50 |
| :--- | :--- |

TCOS value
Binary Floating
D. D 61 D60
RAD value (anglex $\pi / 180$ )
Assign the binary floating value

1. Summary

| ATAN [ATAN] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | - | 32 bits | ACOS |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | V3.0 and above | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Soft element address need to do arctan | 32 bit, BIN |
| D | Result address | 32 bit, BIN |

3.Suitable soft components


$$
\begin{array}{ll}
(\mathrm{D} 51, \mathrm{D} 50) \mathrm{ATAN} \rightarrow & (\mathrm{D} 61, \mathrm{D} 60) \mathrm{RAD} \\
\text { Binary Floating } & \text { Binary Floating }
\end{array}
$$

I Calculate the arctan value ( radian), save the result in the target address

| D51 | D50 |
| :--- | :--- |

ATAN value
Binary Floating

| D. | D61 | D60 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |

RAD value (angle× $\pi / 180$ )
Assign the binary floating value

```
4-10. RTC Instructions
```

| Mnemonic | Function | Chapter |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| TRD | Clock data read | $4-10-1$ |
| TWR | Clock data write | $4-10-2$ |

※1: To use the instructions, The Model should be equipped with RTC function;

## 4-10-1. Read the clock data [TRD]

1. Instruction Summary

Read the clock data:

| Read the clock data: $[\mathrm{TRD}]$ |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | TRD | 32 bits | - |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models |
| Hardware <br> requirement | V2.51 and above | Software <br> requirement | - |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D | Register to save clock data | 16 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable Soft Components


The current time and date of the real time clock are read and stored in the 7 data devices specified by the head address D.

I Read PLC's real time clock according to the following format.
The reading source is the special data register (D8013~D8019) which save clock data.

|  | Unit | Item | Clock data | Unit | Item |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | D8018 | Year | 0-99 | D0 | Year |
|  | D8017 | Month | 1-12 | D1 | Month |
|  | D8016 | Date | 1-31 | D2 | Date |
|  | D8015 | Hour | 0-23 | D3 | Hour |
|  | D8014 | Minute | 0-59 | D4 | Minute |
|  | D8013 | Second | 0-59 | D5 | Second |
|  | D8019 | Week | 0 (Sun.)-6 (Sat.) | D | Week |

## 4-10-2 . W rite Clock Data [TWR]

1. Instruction Summary

Write the clock data:

| Write clock data [TRD] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits | - | 32 bits | TRD |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally <br> rising/falling edge | ON/OFF, | Suitable <br> Models | XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | V2.51 and above | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2. Operands

| Operands | Function | Data Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Write the clock data to the register | 16 bits, BIN |

3. Suitable Soft Components


| Functions |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| And A ctions |$\quad$| The 7 data devices specified with the head |
| :--- |

I Write the set clock data into PLC's real time clock.
In order to write real time clock, the 7 data devices specified with the head address S . should be pre-set.


After executing TWR instruction, the time in real time clock will immediately change to be the new set time. So, when setting the time it is a good idea to set the source data to a time a number of minutes ahead and then drive the instruction when the real time reaches this value.

In this chapter we tell high speed counter's functions, including high speed count model, wiring method, read/write HSC value, reset etc.

## 5-1 . FUNCTIONS SUMMARY

5-2 . HIGH SPEED COUNTER'S MODE

5-3 . HIGH SPEED COUNTER'S RANGE

5-4 . INPUT WIRING OF HIGH SPEED COUNTER

5-5 . INPUT TERMINALS ASSIGNMENT FOR HSC

5-6 . READ AND WRITE THE HSC VALUE

5-7. RESET MODE OF HSC

5-8 . FREQUENCY MULTIPLICATION OF AB PHASE HSC

5-9. HSC EXAMPLES

5-10 . HSC INTERRUPTION

## Instructions List for HSC

| M NEMONIC | FUNCTION | CIRCUIT AND SOFT COM PONENTS |  |  | CHAPTER |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| READ/WRITE HIGH SPEED COUNTER |  |  |  |  |  |
| HSCR | Read HSC | $\square \longmapsto$ HSCR | S | D | 5-6-1 |
| HSCW | Write HSC | $\longrightarrow \longmapsto \mathrm{HSCW}$ | S | D | 5-6-2 |
| OUT | HSC (High Speed Counter) | $\longmapsto \longmapsto$ |  | $\stackrel{K n / D}{ }$ | 3-13 |
| OUT | 24 segments HSC Interruption | $\mid \longmapsto$ |  | Kn, D | 5-10 |
| RST | HSC Reset | $\longmapsto \longmapsto$ | RT | C | 3-13 |

## 5-1. Functions Summary

XC series PLC has HSC (High Speed Counter) function which is independent with the scan cycle. Via choosing different counter, test the high speed input signals with detect sensors and rotary encoders. The highest testing frequency can reach 80KHz.


5-2. HSC M ode

XC series high speed counter's function has three count modes: Increment Mode, Pulse+Direction Mode and AB phase Mode;

## Increment M ode

Under this mode, count and input the pulse signal, the count value increase at each pulse's rising edge;


## Pulse+Direction M ode

Under this mode, the pulse signal and direction signal are all inputted, the count value increase or decrease with the direction signal's status. When the count signal is OFF,
the count input's rising edge carry on plus count; When the count signal is ON, the count input's rising edge carry on minus count;


## AB Phase M ode

Under this mode, the HSC value increase or decrease according to two differential signal (A phase and B phase). According to the multiplication, we have 1-time frequency and 4 -time frequency two modes, but the default count mode is 4 -time mode.
1-time frequency and 4-time frequency modes are shown below:
I 1-time Frequency


I 4-time Frequency


## 5-3. HSC Range

HSC's count range is: K-2,147,483,648 ~ K+2,147,483,647. If the count value overflows this range, then up flow or down flow appears;
For "up flow", it means the count value jumps from $\mathrm{K}+2,147,483,647$ to be K-2,147,483,648, then continue to count; For "down flow", it means the count value jumps from K-2,147,483,648 to be K+2,147, 483, 647 then continue to count.

## 5-4 . HSC Input W iring

For the counter's pulse input wiring, things differ with different PLC model and counter model; several typical input wiring are shown below: (take XC3-48 as the example):


## Pulse+Direction Mode (C620)



AB phase Mode (C630)


## 5-5. HSC ports assignment

Each letter's Meaning:

| U | Dir | A | B |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Pulse input | Count Direction Judgment <br> $(O F F=$ increment, ON=decrement) | A phase input | B phase input |

Normally, X0 and X1 can accept 80 KHz frequency under single phase mode and AB phase mode. Other terminals can accept only 10 KHz under single phase mode, 5 KHz under AB phase mode. X can use as normal input terminals when they are not used as high speed input. The detailed assignment is shown as below:

| XC2 series PLC |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Increment |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Pulse+Dir Input |  |  |  |  | AB Phase Mode |  |  |
|  | C600 | C602 | C604 | C606 | C608 | C610 | C612 | C614 |  | C618 | C620 | C622 | C624 | C626 | C628 | C630 | C632 | C634 |
| Max.F | 80K | 80K | 10K | 10K | 10K |  |  |  |  |  | 80K | 10K |  |  |  | 80K | 5K |  |
| 4-times F |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |
| Count <br> Interrupt | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |
| X000 | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | U |  |  |  |  | A |  |  |
| X001 |  | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Dir |  |  |  |  | B |  |  |
| X002 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |


| X 003 |  |  | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | U |  |  |  |  | A |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | X 004 C


| XC3-14 PLC |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Increment |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Pulse+Dir Input |  |  |  |  | AB Phase Mode |  |  |
|  | C600 | C602 | C604 | C606 | C608 | C610 | C612 | C614 | C616 | C618 | C620 | C622 | C624 | C626 | C628 | C630 | C632 | C634 |
| *Max.F | 10K | 10K | 10K | 10K |  |  |  |  |  |  | 10K | 10K |  |  |  | 5K |  |  |
| 4-times F |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Count <br> Interrupt | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X000 | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | U |  |  |  |  | A |  |  |
| X001 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Dir |  |  |  |  | B |  |  |
| X002 |  | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X003 |  |  | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X004 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X005 |  |  |  | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

* C600, C620, C630 can support 80 KHz with special requirement

| XC3-19AR-E |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Increment |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Pulse+Dir Input |  |  |  |  | AB Phase Mode |  |  |
|  | C600 | C602 | C604 | C606 | C608 | C610 | C612 | C614 | C616 | C618 | C620 | C622 |  | C626 | C628 | C630 |  | C634 |
| Max.F | 10K | 10K | 10K | 10K |  |  |  |  |  |  | 10K | 10K |  |  |  | 5K | 5K |  |
| 4-times F |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |
| Count <br> Interrupt | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |
| X000 | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | U |  |  |  |  | A |  |  |
| X001 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Dir |  |  |  |  | B |  |  |
| X002 |  | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | U |  |  |  |  | A |  |
| X003 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Dir |  |  |  |  | B |  |
| X004 |  |  | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X005 |  |  |  | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

XC3-24, 32 PLC and XC5-48, 60 PLC
Increment


| XC3-48, 60 PLC |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Increment |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Pulse+Dir Input |  |  |  |  | AB Phase Mode |  |  |
|  | C600 | C602 | C604 | C606 | C608 | C610 | C612 | C614 | C616 | C618 | C620 | C622 | C624 | C626 | C628 | C630 | C632 | C634 |
| Max.F | 80K | 80K | 10K | 10K |  |  |  |  |  |  | 80K | 80K |  |  |  | 80K | 80K |  |
| 4-times F |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |
| Count <br> Interrupt | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |
| X000 | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | U |  |  |  |  | A |  |  |
| X001 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Dir |  |  |  |  | B |  |  |
| X002 |  | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | U |  |  |  |  | A |  |
| X003 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Dir |  |  |  |  | B |  |
| X004 |  |  | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X005 |  |  |  | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |


| XC 5-24/32 PLC , XCM -24/32 PLC |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Increment |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Pulse+Dir Input |  |  |  |  | AB Phase Mode |  |  |
|  | C600 | C602 |  | C606 | C608 | C610 | C612 | C614 | C616 | C618 | C620 | C622 | C624 | C626 | C628 | C630 | C632 | C634 |
| Max.F | 80K | 10K |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 80K |  |  |  |  | 80K |  |  |
| 4-times F |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |
| Count Interrupt | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |
| X000 | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | U |  |  |  |  | A |  |  |
| X001 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Dir |  |  |  |  | B |  |  |
| X002 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X003 |  | U |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |


| X004 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| X005 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X006 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 5-6. Read/Write HSC value

All high speed counters support read instruction [HSCR] and write instruction [HSCW], but users need to use hardware V3.1c and above.

## 5-6-1 . Read HSC value [HSCR ]

1, Instruction Summary
Read HSC value to the specified register;

| Read from HSC [HSCR]/ write to HSC [HSCW] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 <br> Instruction | - | $32 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | HSCR |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF, <br> rising/falling edge | Suitable <br> models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | V3.1c and above | Software <br> requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Specify HSC code | 32 bits, BIN |
| D | Specify the read/written register | 32 bits, BIN |

3, Suitable Soft Components
word

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | constant |  | module |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | $\mathrm{K} / \mathrm{H}$ | D | QD |
| S |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| D | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## FUNCTIONS AND ACTIONS



I When the activate condition is true, read the HSC value in C630 (DWORD) into D10 (DWORD)
I Instruction HSCR read the HSC value into the specified register, improve HSC value's precision.

## Sample Program:



## 5-6-2. WriteHSC value [HSCW]

1, Instruction Summary
Write the specified register value into HSC;

| Write HSC value [HSCW] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | - | $32 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | HSCW |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF, <br> rising/falling edge | Suitable <br> models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | V3.1c and above | Software <br> requirement | - |

2, operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Specify HSC code | 32 bits, BIN |
| D | Specify the read/written register | 32 bits, BIN |

3, suitable soft components
word

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | constant <br> K/H | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
| S |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| D | - |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

FUNCTIONS AND ACTIONS


I When the activate condition is true, write the value in D20 (DWORD) into C630 (DWORD), the original value is replaced;
I We suggest the users to apply high speed counter only with HSCR and HSCW, not with other instructions like DMOV, LD>, DMUL etc. and users must run after converting HSC to be other registers.

## 5-7. HSC Reset M ode

Reset HSC via software:


In the above graph, when M 0 is $\mathrm{ON}, \mathrm{C} 600$ starts to count the input pulse on X 0 ; when M1 changes from OFF to be ON, reset C600, clear the count value

## 5-8 . AB Phase counter multiplication setting

About AB phase counter, modify the frequency multiplication value via setting FLASH data register FD8241, FD8242, FD8243. If the value is 1, it is 1-time frequency, if it is 4 , it is 4 -time frequency.

| Register | Function | Set Value | Meaning |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| FD8241 | Frequency multiplication of C630 | 1 | 1-time frequency |
|  |  | 4 | 4-time frequency |
| FD8242 | Frequency multiplication of C632 | 1 | 1-time frequency |
|  |  | 4 | 4-time frequency |
| FD8243 | Frequency multiplication of C634 | 1 | 1-time frequency |
|  |  | 4 | 4-time frequency |

## 5-9. HSC Example

Below, we take XC3-60 PLC as the example, to introduce HSC's program form;


I When normally ON coil M8000 is ON, set the value of C600, the set value is K888888888, read the HSC value (DWORD) into data register D0 (DWORD).
I If the value in C 600 is smaller than value in D2, set the output coil Y0 ON; If the value in C600 equals or be larger than value in D 2 , and smaller than value in D 4 , set the output coil Y1 ON; If the value in C600 equals or be larger than value in D4, set the output coil Y2 ON;
I When comes the rising edge of M1, reset HSC C600 and stop counting.


When M4 is ON, C620 starts the HSC with the OFF $\rightarrow \mathrm{ON}$ of X 000 ; judge the count direction according to the input X001 status (OFF or ON). If X001 is OFF, it's increment count; if X001 is ON, it's decrement count;
I When comes the rising edge of M5, reset HSC C620 and stop counting.


I When M8 is ON, C630 starts to count immediately. Count input via X000 (B Phase), X001 (A Phase)
I When the count value exceeds K3000, output coil Y2 is ON;
I When comes the rising edge of M9, reset HSC C630


I When therising edge of initial positive pulse coil M8002 comes, i.e. Each scan cycle starts, HSC C630 reset and clear the count value.
I When set coil M8000 ON, C630 starts to count, the count value is set to be K8888888。

I If the count value is greater than K0 but smaller than K100, the output coil Y0 set ON; If the count value is greater thanK100 but smaller than K200 时, the output coil Y1 set ON; If the count value is greater thanK200, the output coilY2 set ON;

To XC series PLC, each HSC channels has 24 segments 32 -bit pre-set value. When the HSC difference value equals the correspond 24 -segment pre-set value, then interruption occures according to the interruption tag;

To use this function, please use hardware V3.1c or above;

## 5-10-1. I nstruction Description

(for the program about interruption, please refer chapter 5-10-4)


| LD | M0 |  |  | //HSC activate condition M0 (interruption count condition) |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| OUT | C600 | K20000 | D4000 | //HSC value and set the start ID of 24-segment |
| LDP | M1 |  |  | //activate condition reset |
| RST | C600 |  | //HSC and 24-segment reset (interruption reset) |  |

As shown in the above graph, data register D4000 is the start ID of 24 -segment pre-set value area. Behind it, save each pre-set value in DWORD form. Please pay attention when using HSC:

I If certain pre-set value is 0 , it means count interruption stops at this segment;
I Set the interruption pre-set value but not write the correspond interruption program is not allowed;
I 24 -segment interruption of HSC occurs in order. I.e. If the first segment interruption doesn't happen, then the second segment interruption will not happen;
I 24 -segment pre-set value can be specified to be relative value or absolute value. Meantime, users can specify the et value to be loop or not. But the oop mode can't be used together with absolute value.

## 5-10-2. Interruption tags to H SC

In the below table, we list each counter's 24 -segment pre-set value to its interruption tag. E.e.: 24 -segment pre-set value of counter C600 correspond with the interruption pointer: I1001, I1002, I1003, ${ }^{\prime}$ I1024.

Increment mode

| Counter | Interruption tag |
| :--- | :--- |
| C600 | I1001~I1024 |
| C602 | I1101~I1124 |
| C604 | I1201~I1224 |
| C606 | $\mathrm{I} 1301 \sim \mathrm{I} 1324$ |
| C608 | $\mathrm{I} 1401 \sim \mathrm{I} 1424$ |

pulse+direction mode

| Counter | Interruption tag |
| :--- | :--- |
| C620 | I2001~I2024 |
| C622 | I2101~I2124 |
| C624 | I2201~I2224 |
| C626 | I2301~I2324 |
| C628 | I2401~I2424 |

AB phase mode

| Counter | Interruption tag |
| :---: | :---: |
| C630 | I2501~I2524 |
| C632 | I2601~I2624 |
| C634 | I2701~I2724 |
| C636 | I2801~I2824 |
| C638 | I2901~I2924 |


| C610 | $\mathrm{I} 1501 \sim \mathrm{I} 1524$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| C612 | $\mathrm{I} 1601 \sim \mathrm{I} 1624$ |
| C614 | $\mathrm{I} 1701 \sim \mathrm{I} 1724$ |
| C616 | $\mathrm{I} 1801 \sim \mathrm{I} 1824$ |
| C618 | $\mathrm{I} 1901 \sim \mathrm{I} 1924$ |

## Define the presetvalue

HSC 24-segment pre-set value is the difference value, the count value equals the counter's current value plus the preset value, generate the interruption. N interruption tags correspond with N interruptionpreset values. The $(\mathrm{N}+1)$ preset value is 0 ;
E.g. 1, the current value is C 630 is 0 , the first preset value is 10000 , the preset value in segment 2 is -5000 , the preset value in segment 3 is 20000. When start to count, the counter's current value is 10000 , generate first interruption I2501; When start to count, the counter's current value is 5000, generate first interruption I2502; When start to count, the counter's current value is 25000, generate first interruption I2503.

See graph below:

E.g. 2, the current value is C 630 is 10000 , the first preset value is 10000 , the preset value in segment 2 is 5000 , the preset value in segment 3 is 20000 . When start to count, the counter's current value is 20000, generate first interruption I2501; When start to count, the counter's current value is 25000 , generate first interruption I2502 ;When start to count, the counter's current value is 45000, generate first interruption I2503.

See graph below:


## 5-10-3. L oop mode of HSC Inter ruption

M ode 1: Unicycle (normal mode)
Not happen after HSC interruption ends. The conditions below can re-start the interruption:
(1) reset the HSC
(2) Reboot the HSC activate condition

## M ode 2: C ontinuous loop

Restart after HSC interruption ends. This mode is especially suitable for the following application:
(1) continous back-forth movement
(2) Generate cycle interruption according to the defined pulse

Via setting he special auxiliary relays, users can set the HSC interruption to be unicycle mode or continous loop mode. The loop mode is only suitable with the relative count. The detailed assignment is show below:

| ID | HSC ID | Setting |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| M8270 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C600) | OFF: unicycle mode |
| M8271 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C602) |  |
| M8272 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C604) |  |
| M8273 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C606) |  |
| M8274 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C608) |  |
| M8275 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C610) |  |
| M8276 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C612) |  |
| M8277 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C614) |  |
| M8278 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C616) |  |
| M8279 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C618) |  |
| M8280 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C620) |  |


| M8281 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C622) |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| M8282 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C624) |  |
| M8283 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C626) |  |
| M8284 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C628) |  |
| M8285 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C630) |  |
| M8286 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C632) |  |
| M8287 | 24 segments HSC interruption loop (C634) |  |

## 5-10-4. Example of HSC I nter ruption

## E.g. 2 : Application on knit-weaving machine (continous loop mode)

The system theory is shown as below: Control the inverter via PLC, thereby control the motor. Meantime, via the feedback signal from encoder, control the knit-weaving machine and realize the precise position.



Below is PLC program: Y2 represents forward output signal; Y3 represents backward output signal; Y4 represents output signal of speed 1; C340: Back-forth times accumulation counter; C630: AB phase HSC;


Instruction List Form:


## PULSE OUTPUT

In this chapter we tell the pulse function of XC series PLC. The content includes pulse output instructions, input/output wiring, items to note and relate coils and registers etc.

## 6-1 . Functions Summary

6-2 . Pulse Output Types and Instructions

6-3. Output Wiring

6-4 . Items To Note

6-5 . Sample Programs

6-6 . Coils and Registers Relate To Pulse Output

Pulse Output Instructions List

| M nemonic | Function | Circuit And Soft Device |  |  |  |  |  | Chapter |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| PULSE OUTPUT |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| PLSY | Unidirectional ration pulse output without ACC/DEC time change | $\longmapsto \longmapsto P L S Y$ |  | S2 | D |  |  | 6-2-1 |
| PLSF | Variable frequency pulse output | $\longmapsto \longmapsto P \text { PLSF }$ | S | D |  |  |  | 6-2-2 |
| PLSR | Ration pulse output with ACC/DEC speed | $\longmapsto \longmapsto$ PLSR | S1 | S2 | S3 | D |  | 6-2-3 |
| PLSNEXT/ PLSNT | Pulse Section Switch | $\longmapsto \longmapsto$ PLSNT | S |  |  |  |  | 6-2-4 |
| STOP | Pulse Stop | $\longmapsto \longmapsto$ STOP | S |  |  |  |  | 6-2-5 |
| PLSMV | Refresh Pulse Nr. immediately | $\longmapsto \longmapsto P \text { PLSMV }$ | S | D |  |  |  | 6-2-6 |
| ZRN | Original Return | - | S1 | S2 | S3 | D |  | 6-2-7 |
| DRVI |  | $\longmapsto \longmapsto$ DRVI | S1 | S2 | S3 | D1 | D2 | 6-2-8 |
| DRVA | Absolute <br> Position <br> Control | $\longmapsto \longmapsto$ DRVA | S1 | S2 | S3 | D1 | D2 | 6-2-9 |
| PLSA | Absolute <br> Position <br> multi-section <br> pulse control | $\longmapsto \vdash P \mathrm{PLSA}$ | S1 | S2 | D |  |  | 6-2-10 |

```
6-1 . Functions Summary
```

Generally, XC3 and XC5 series PLC are equipped with 2CH pulse output function. Via different instructions, users can realize unidirectional pulse output without ACC/DEC speed; unidirectional pulse output with ACC/DEC speed; multi-segments, positive/negative output etc., the output frequency can reach 400 K Hz .

※1: To use pulse output, please choose PLC with transistor output, like XC3-14T-E or XC3-60RT-E etc.
※2: XC5 series 32I/O PLC has 4CH (Y0, Y1, Y2, Y3) pulse output function.

## 6-2 . Pulse Output Types and Instructions

```
6-2-1. Unidirectional ration pulse output without ACC/DEC time change [PLSY ]
```

1, Instruction Summary
Instruction to generate ration pulse with the specified frequency;

| Unidirectional ration pulse output without ACC/DEC time change [PLSY] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | PLSY | $32 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | DPLSY |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF coil | Suitable <br> models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardwarere <br> quirement | - | Software <br> requirements | - |

## 2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the frequency's value or register ID | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| S2 | Specify the pulse number or register's ID | 16 bits $/ 32$ bits, BIN |
| D | Specify the pulse output port | bit |

3, Suitable soft components

| Word | operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | constant <br> K/H | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | - |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | - |  |  |

Bit

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| D |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

FunctionsAnd Actions

《16 bits instruction》


I Frequency Range： $0 \sim 400 \mathrm{KHz}$ ；
I Pulse Quantity Range：0～K32767 ；
I Pulse output from Y000 or Y001 only；
I When M0 is ON，PLSY instruction output 30 Hz pulse at Y0，the pulse number is decided by D1，M8170 is set ON only when sending the pulse． When the output pulse number reaches the set value，stop sending the pulse， M8170 is set to be OFF，reset M0；

《32 bits instruction》


I Frequency Range： $0 \sim 400 \mathrm{KHz}$ ；
I Pulse Quantity Range：0～K2147483647；
I Pulse output from Y000 or Y001 only；
I When M0 is ON，DPLSY instruction output 30 Hz pulse at Y0，the pulse number is decided by D2D1，M8170 is set ON only when sending the pulse． When the output pulse number reaches the set value，stop sending the pulse， M8170 is set to be OFF，reset M0；

## Output M ode

《continuous or limited pulse number》

Limited pulse output

－Set pulse number

When finish sending the set pulse number，stop outputting automatically

## Items to Note

If the control object is stepping／servo motor，we recommend users not use this instruction，to avoid the motor losing synchronism．PLSR is available．

## 6-2-2 . Variable Pulse Output [PLSF]

1, Instruction Summary
Instruction to generate continuous pulse in the form of variable frequency

| Variable Pulse Output [PLSF] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | PLSF | $32 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | DPLSF |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF coil | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Specify the frequency or register ID | 16 bits/32 bits, BIN |
| D | Specify pulse output port | bit |

3, suitable soft components

Word

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | constant |  | module |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | $\mathrm{K} / \mathrm{H}$ | $\mathbb{D}$ | QD |  |  |  |  |  |
| S | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Bit

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| D |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

FunctionsAnd Actions

《16 bit instruction form》


I Frequency range: $6 \mathrm{~Hz} \sim 400 \mathrm{KHz}$ (when the set frequency is lower than 200 Hz , output 200 Hz )
I Pulse can only be output at Y000 or Y001.
I With the changing of setting frequency in D0, the output pulse frequency changes at Y0
I Accumulate pulse number in register D8170 (DWord)

| M0 | (5.) |  | D. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | DPLSF | D0 | YO |

I Frequency range: $6 \mathrm{~Hz} \sim 400 \mathrm{KHz}$ (when the set frequency is lower than 200 Hz , output 200 Hz )
I Pulse can only be output at Y000 or Y001.
I With the changing of setting frequency in D0, the output pulse frequency changes at Y0
I Accumulate pulse number in register D8170 (DWord)

## O utput M ode

Sequential pulse output


Sequential output pulse with the set frequency till stop outputvia the instruction

## 6-2-3. M ulti-segment pulse control at relative position [PL SR ]

PLSR/DPLSR instruction has two control modes. Below we will instroduce one by one;
$\ddot{y} \quad$ M ode 1: segment uni-directional pulse output PL SR
1, Instruction Summary
Generate certain pulse quantity (segmented) with the specified frequency and acceleration/deceleration time

| Segmented uni-directional pulse output [PLSR] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | PLSR | $32 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | DPLSR |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF coil | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the soft component's start ID of the segmented <br> pulse parameters | $16 \mathrm{bit} / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| S2 | Specify acceleration/deceleration time or soft component's <br> ID | $16 \mathrm{bit} / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| D | Specify the pulse output port | Bit |

3，suitable soft components

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | constant |  | module |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | $\mathrm{K} / \mathrm{H}$ | D | QD |
| S 1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| S 2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |

Bit

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn．m |
| D |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |

## Functions And A

《16 bit instruction form》


《32 bit instruction form》


I The parameters＇address is a section starts from Dn or FDn．In the above example（16bit instruction form）：D0 set the first segment pulse＇s highest frequency，D1 set the first segment＇s pulse number，D2 set the second segment pulse＇s highest frequency，D3 set the second segment＇s pulse number，$\cdots \cdots$ if the set value in $\mathrm{Dn}, ~ \mathrm{Dn}+1$ is 0 ，this represents the end of segment，the segment number is not limited．
I To 32 bit instruction DPLSR，D0，D1 set the first segment pulse＇s highest frequency，D2， D3 set the first segment＇s pulse number，D4，D5 set the second segment pulse＇s highest frequency，D6，D7 set the second segment＇s pulse number．．．．．．
I Acceleration／deceleration time is the time from the start to the first segment＇s highest frequency．Meantime，it defines the slope of all segment＇s frequency to time．In this way the following acceleration／deceleration will perform according to this slope．
I Pulse can be output at only Y000 or Y001
I Frequency range： $0 \sim 400 \mathrm{KHz}$ ；
I Pulse number range： $0 \sim \mathrm{~K} 32,767$（ 16 bits instruction）， $0 \sim \mathrm{~K} 2,147,483,647$（ 32 bits instruction）
｜Acceleration／deceleration time ：below 65535 ms

y M ode 2: segmented dual-directional pulse output PLSR
1, Instruction Summary
Generate certain pulse quantity with the specified frequency, acceleration/deceleration time and pulse direction ;

| Segmented dual-directional pulse output [PLSR] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 <br> Instruction | PLSR | $32 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | DPLSR |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF coil | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the soft component's start ID of the segmented pulse <br> parameters | 16 bit/ 32 bit, <br> BIN |
| S2 | Specify acceleration/deceleration time or soft component's ID | 16 bit/ 32 bit, <br> BIN |
| D1 | Specify the pulse output port | Bit |
| D2 | Specify the pulse output direction's port | Bit |

3, suitable soft components

Word

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
| S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| S2 | - | - |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | K |  |  |

Bit

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| D1 |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| D2 |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

《16 bit instruction form》


I The parameters' address is a section starts from Dn or FDn. In the above example: D0 set the first segment pulse's highest frequency, D1 set the first segment's pulse number, D2 set the second segment pulse's highest frequency, D3 set the second segment's pulse number, $\cdots \cdots$ if the set value in $\mathrm{Dn}, ~ \mathrm{Dn}+1$ is 0 , this represents the end of segment, the segment number is not limited.
I Acceleration/deceleration time is the time from the start to the first segment's highest frequency. Meantime, it defines the slope of all segment's frequency to time. In this way the following acceleration/deceleration will perform according to this slope.
I Pulse can be output at only Y000 or Y001
I Y for Pulse direction can be specified freely. E.g.: if in S1 (the first segment) the pulse number is positive, Y output is ON ; if the pulse number is negative, Y output is OFF; Note: in the first segment's pulse output, the pulse direction is only decided by the pulse number's nature (positive or negative) of the first segment.
I Frequency range: $0 \sim 400 \mathrm{KHz}$;
I Pulse number range: 0~K32,767 (16 bits instruction), 0~K2,147,483,647 (32 bits instruction)
I Acceleration/deceleration time : below 65535 ms


## 6-2-4 . Pulse Segment Switch [PL SNEXT ]/[PLSNT]

1, Instruction Summary
Enter the next pulse output;

| Pulse segment switch [PLSNEXT]/[PLSNT] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits <br> Instruction  | PLSNEXT/PLSNT | 32 bits <br> Instruction  | - |  |


| Execution <br> condition | Rising/falling edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| D | Specify the pulse output port | Bit |

3, suitable soft components


## FunctionsAnd Actions

《16 bit instruction form》


I If the pulse output reaches the highest frequency at the current segment, and output steadily at this frequency; when M1 changes from OFF to ON, then enter the next pulse output with the acceleration/deceleration time;
I Run the instruction within the acceleration/deceleration time is invalid;

--------(the dashed line represents the original pulse output

1, Instruction Summary
Stop pulse output immediately;

| Pulse stop [STOP] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | STOP | $32 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | - |
| Execution <br> condition | Rising/falling edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D | Specify the port to stop pulse output | Bit |

3, suitable soft components
Bit

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |
| D |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |

## FunctionsAnd Actions

《16 bit instruction form》


I When M000 changes from OFF to be ON, PLSR output pulse at Y000. D0 specify the frequency, D001 specify the pulse number, D100 specify the acceleration/deceleration time; when the output pulse number reaches the set value, stop outputting the pulse; on the rising edge of M001, STOP instruction stops outputting the pulse at Y000;

1, Instruction Summary
Refresh the pulse number at the port;

| Refresh the pulse number at the port [PLSMV] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | - | $32 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | PLSMV |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF coil | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S | Specify the pulse number or soft components' ID | 32 bit, BIN |
| D | Specify the port to refresh the pulse | Bit |

3, suitable soft components
Word


Bit

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| D |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## FunctionsAnd Actions

《32 bit instruction form》



I When the working table is moving backward, it gets the origin signal X 2 , execute the external interruption, PLSMV command run immediately, not effected by the scan cycle. Refresh the pulse number from Y0 and send to D8170;
I This instruction is used remove the accumulation difference caused in pulse control;

## 6-2-7 . Back to the Origin [ZRN]

1, Instruction Summary
Back to the Origin

| Back to the Origin [ZRN] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | ZRN | $32 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | DZRN |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF coil | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the backward speed or soft components' ID | $16 / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| S2 | Specify the creeping speed or soft components' ID | $16 / 32$ bit, BIN |
| S3 | Specify the soft components' ID of the close point's signal | Bit |
| D | Specify the pulse output port | Bit |

3, suitable soft components
Word

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | constant |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | module |  |  |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | K/H | D | QD |
| S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
| S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |

Bit

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| S3 | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| D |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

《16 bit instruction form》


《32 bit instruction form》


I Pulse output address：Y0 or Y1 only；
I S1 and S2 direction is same and the absolute value of S1 is greater than S2；
I After driving the instruction，move with the origin return speed S 1 ；
I When the closed point signal turns from OFF to be ON，decrease the speed to be S2；
I When the closed point signal turns from ON to be OFF，write to registers （Y0：［D8171，D8170］，Y1：［D8174，D8173］）when stopping pulse output；
I The decrease time can be specified by D8230～D8239；please refer to chapter 6－6 for details；

## 6－2－8．Relative position uni－segment pulse control［DRVI］

1，Instruction Summary
Relative position uni－segment pulse control；

| Relative position uni－segment pulse control［DRVI］ |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | DRVI | 32 bits <br> Instruction | DDRVI |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON／OFF coil | Suitable <br> Models | XC2，XC3，XC5，XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2，Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the output pulse value or soft components ID | $16 / 32$ bit，BIN |
| S2 | Specify the output pulse frequency or soft components ID | $16 / 32$ bit，BIN |
| D1 | Specify the pulse output port | Bit |
| D2 | Specify the pulse output direction port | Bit |

3，suitable soft components

Word

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | constant |  | module |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | K／H | $\mathbb{D}$ | QD |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Bit

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn．m |  |
| D1 |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| D2 |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## Functions And Actions

《16 bit instruction form》


《32 bit instruction form》


I Pulse output ID：only Y0 or Y1；
I Pulse output direction can specify any Y；
I Acceleration／deceleration time is specified by D8230（single word）
I The relative drive form means：move from the current position；

## 6－2－9．Absolute position uni－segment pulse control［DRVA］

1，Instruction Summary
Absolute position uni－segment pulse control

| Absolute position uni－segment pulse control［DRVA］ |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | DRVA | $32 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | DDRVA |
| Execution | Normally ON／OFF coil | Suitable | XC2，XC3，XC5，XCM |


| condition |  | Models |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2，Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the output pulse value or soft components ID | $16 / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| S2 | Specify the output pulse frequency or soft components ID | $16 / 32$ bit，BIN |
| D1 | Specify the pulse output port | Bit |
| D2 | Specify the pulse output direction port | Bit |

3，suitable soft components
Word

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
| S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
| S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | － | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | － |  |  |

Bit

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn．m |  |
| D1 |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| D2 |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## FunctionsAnd Actions

《16 bit instruction form》


《32 bit instruction form》

（Y0：［D8171，D8170］，Y1：［D8174，D8173］）


I Pulse output ID: only Y0 or Y1;
I Pulse output direction can specify any Y ;
I Acceleration/deceleration time is specified by D8230 (single word)
I The relative drive form means: move from the origin position;
I Target position means S1, correspond with the following current value register as the absolute position

## 6-2-10 . Absolute position multi-segment pulse control [PLSA]

PLSA/DPLSA has two control modes, below we will introduce one by one;
$\ddot{y} \quad$ M ode 1: uni-directional pulse output PLSA

1, Instruction Summary
Generate absolute position segmented pulse with the specified frequency, acceleration/deceleration time and pulse direction;

| Absolute position multi-segment pulse control [PLSA] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits <br> Instruction | PLSA | $32 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | DPLSA |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF coil | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the soft component's number to output the pulse <br> parameters | $16 / 32 \mathrm{bit}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| S2 | Specify the acceleration/deceleration time or soft component's <br> number | $16 / 32$ bit, BIN |
| D | Specify the pulse output port | Bit |

3，suitable soft components
Word

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | constantK/H | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
| S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | － |  |  |  |  | K |  |  |

Bit

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn．m |  |
| D1 |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## FunctionsAnd Actions

《16 bit instruction form》


《32 bit instruction form》


I The parameters＇address is a section starts from Dn or FDn．In the above example：D0 set the first segment pulse＇s highest frequency，D1 set the first segment＇s absolute position，D2 set the second segment pulse＇s highest frequency，D3 set the second segment＇s absolute position ，$\cdots \cdots$ if the set value in $\mathrm{Dn}, ~ \mathrm{Dn}+1$ is 0 ，this represents the end of segment，we can set 24 segments in total；
I Acceleration／deceleration time is the time from the start to the first segment＇s highest frequency．Meantime，it defines the slope of all segment＇s frequency to time．In this way the following acceleration／deceleration will perform according to this slope．
I Pulse can be output at only Y000 or Y001
$\ddot{y} \quad$ M ode2: dual-directional pulse output PLSA

## 1, Instruction Summary

Generate absolute position pulse with the specified frequency, acceleration/deceleration time and pulse direction;

| Absolute position multi-segment pulse control [PLSA] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | PLSA | Ints <br> Instruction | DPLSA |  |
| Execution <br> condition | Normally ON/OFF coil | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |  |
| Hardware <br> requirement | - | Software <br> requirement | - |  |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the soft component's number to output the pulse <br> parameters | $16 / 32$ bit, BIN |
| S2 | Specify the acceleration/deceleration time or soft component's <br> number | $16 / 32$ bit, BIN |
| D1 | Specify the pulse output port | Bit |
| D2 | Specify the pulse direction port | Bit |

3, suitable soft components
Word

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
| S1 | - | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| S2 | - | - |  | - | - |  |  |  |  | K |  |  |

Bit

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |
| D1 |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| D2 |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |

FunctionsAnd Actions

《16 bit instruction form》


## 《32 bit instruction form》



I The parameters' address is a section starts from Dn or FDn. In the above example: D0 set the first segment pulse's highest frequency, D1 set the first segment's absolute position , D2 set the second segment pulse's highest frequency, D3 set the second segment's absolute position , $\cdots \cdots$ if the set value in $\mathrm{Dn}, ~ \mathrm{Dn}+1$ is 0 , this represents the end of segment, we can set 24 segments in total;
I Acceleration/deceleration time is the time from the start to the first segment's highest frequency. Meantime, it defines the slope of all segment's frequency to time. In this way the following acceleration/deceleration will perform according to this slope.
I Pulse can be output at only Y000 or Y001
I The Y port to output the pulse direction can be set freely;



Below is the graph to show the output terminals and stepping driver wiring:
PLC side Stepping driver side


## 6-4 . Items to Note

1, Concept of Step Frequency


I During ACC/DEC, each step time is 5 ms , this time is fixed and not changeable.
I The minimum step frequency (each step's rising/falling time) is 10 Hz . If the frequency is lower than 10 Hz , calculate as 10 Hz ; the maximum step frequency is 15 Hz . If the frequency is larger than 15 Hz , calculate as 15 Hz ;
I In case of frequency larger than 200 Hz , please make sure each segment's pulse number no less than 10 , if the set value is less than 10 , send as 200 Hz ;

2, frequency jump in segment pulse output


I When outputting the segmented pulse, if the current segment's pulse has been set out, while meantime it doesn't reach the highest frequency, then from the current segment to the next pulse output segment, pulse jump appears, see graph above;

3, dual pulse output is invalid
I In one main program, users can't write two or more pulse output instructions with one output port Y;
I The below sample is wrong;


## 6-5. Sample Programs

## E.g.1: Stop at certain length

With instruction [PLSR] and [PLSNEXT], realize this "stop at certain length" function;


M8170.

Take the sample program as the example, set two segments pulse output in D0, D1 and D2, D3, with the same frequency value; In second segment pulse output, set pulse number D3 as the output pulse number after receive M1 signal. This will realize "stop at certain length" function. See graph by the left side;

## E.g.2: follow function

In this sample, the pulse frequency from Y0 equals with the frequency tested from X003. If the frequency tested from X003 changes, the pulse frequency from Y0 changes;


6-6. Relative coils and registers of pulse output

Some flags of pulse output are listed below:

| ID | Pulse ID | Function | specification |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| M8170 | PULSE_1 | "sending pulse" flag | Being ON when sending the pulse, |
| M8171 |  | overflow flag of "32 bits pulse <br> sending" | When overflow, Flag is on |
| M8172 | Direction flag | 1 is positive direction, the correspond <br> direction port is on |  |
| M8173 | PULSE_2 | "sending pulse" flag | Being ON when sending the pulse, |
| M8174 |  | overflow flag of "32 bits pulse <br> sending" | When overflow, Flag is on |
| M8175 | Direction flag | 1 is positive direction, the correspond <br> direction port is on |  |
| M8176 | PULSE_3 | "sending pulse" flag | Being ON when sending the pulse, |
| M8177 |  | overflow flag of "32 bits pulse <br> sending" | When overflow, Flag is on |
| M8178 |  | Direction flag | 1 is positive direction, the correspond |


|  |  |  | direction port is on |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| M8179 | PULSE_4 | "sending pulse" flag | Being ON when sending the pulse, |
| M8180 |  | overflow flag of " 32 bits pulse sending" | When overflow, Flag is on |
| M8181 |  | Direction flag | 1 is positive direction, the correspond direction port is on |
| M8210 | PULSE_1 | Pulse alarm flag (frequency change suddenly) | 1 is alarm, 0 is correct |
| M8211 |  | Neglect the alarm or not | When flag is 1, stop sending alarm |
| M8212 | PULSE_2 | Pulse alarm flag (frequency change suddenly) | 1 is alarm, 0 is correct |
| M8213 |  | Neglect the alarm or not | When flag is 1 , stop sending alarm |
| M8214 | PULSE_3 | Pulse alarm flag (frequency change suddenly) | 1 is alarm, 0 is correct |
| M8215 |  | Neglect the alarm or not | When flag is 1 , stop sending alarm |
| M8216 | PULSE_4 | Pulse alarm flag (frequency change suddenly) | 1 is alarm, 0 is correct |
| M8217 |  | Neglect the alarm or not | When flag is 1 , stop sending alarm |
| M8218 | PULSE_5 | Pulse alarm flag (frequency change suddenly) | 1 is alarm, 0 is correct |
| M8219 |  | Neglect the alarm or not | When flag is 1 , stop sending alarm |

Some special registers of pulse output are listed below:

| ID | Pulse ID | Function | Specification |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D8170 | PULSE_1 | The low 16 bits of accumulated pulse number |  |
| D8171 |  | The high 16 bits of accumulated pulse <br> number |  |
| D8172 |  | The current segment (means Nr.n segment) |  |
| D8173 | PULSE_2 | The low 16 bits of accumulated pulse number |  |
| D8174 |  | The high 16 bits of accumulated pulse <br> number |  |
| D8175 |  | The current segment (means Nr.n segment) |  |
| D8176 | PULSE_3 | The low 16 bits of accumulated pulse number |  |
| D8177 |  | The high 16 bits of accumulated pulse <br> number |  |
| D8178 |  | The current segment (means Nr.n segment) |  |
| D8179 | PULSE_4 | The low 16 bits of accumulated pulse number |  |
| D8180 |  | The high 16 bits of accumulated pulse |  |


|  |  | number |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D8181 |  | The current segment (means Nr.n segment) |  |
| D8190 | PULSE_1 | The low 16 bits of the current accumulated <br> current pulse number |  |
| D8191 |  | The high 16 bits of the current accumulated <br> current pulse number |  |
| D8192 | PULSE_2 | The low 16 bits of the current accumulated <br> current pulse number |  |
| D8193 |  | The high 16 bits of the current accumulated <br> current pulse number |  |
| D8195 |  | The high 16 bits of the current accumulated <br> current pulse number | Only |
| D8196 | PULSE_4 | The low 16 bits of the current accumulated <br> current pulse number |  |
| D8197 |  | The high 16 bits of the current accumulated <br> current pulse number |  |
| D8210 | PULSE_1 | The error pulse segment's position |  |
| D8212 | PULSE_2 | The error pulse segment's position |  |
| D8214 | PULSE_3 | The error pulse segment's position |  |
| D8216 | PULSE_4 | The error pulse segment's position |  |
| D8218 | PULSE_5 | The error pulse segment's position |  |

Absolute position/relative position/back to origin;

| ID | Pulse | Function | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| D8230 | PULSE_1 | Rising time of the absolute/relation position instruction (Y0) |  |
| D8231 |  | Falling time of the origin return instruction (Y0) |  |
| D8232 | PULSE_2 | Rising time of the absolute/relation position instruction (Y1) |  |
| D8233 |  | Falling time of the origin return instruction (Y1) |  |
| D8234 | PULSE_3 | Rising time of the absolute/relation position instruction (Y2) |  |
| D8235 |  | Falling time of the origin return instruction (Y2) |  |
| D8236 | PULSE_4 | Rising time of the absolute/relation position instruction (Y3) |  |
| D8237 |  | Falling time of the origin return instruction (Y3) |  |


| D8238 | PULSE_5 | Rising time of the absolute/relation position <br> instruction |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | Falling time of the origin return instruction |  |
| D8239 |  |  |  |

## Communication Function

This chapter mainly includes: basic concept of communication, Modbus communication, free communication and CAN-bus communication;

7-1 . Summary

7-2 . Modbus Communication

7-3 . Free Communication

7-4 . CAN Communication

Relative Instructions：

| M nemonic | Function | Circuit and Soft Components |  |  |  |  |  | Chapter |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| M ODBUS Communication |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| COLR | Coil Read | Wけ COLR | S1 | S2 | S3 | D1 | D2 | 7－2－3 |
| INPR | Input coil read | － | S1 | S2 | S3 | D1 | D2 | 7－2－3 |
| COLW | Single coil write | －COLW | D1 | D2 | S1 | S2 |  | 7－2－3 |
| MCLW | Multi－coil write | $\longmapsto \vdash$ MCLW | D1 | D2 | D3 | S1 | S2 | 7－2－3 |
| REGR | Register read | $\mid \vdash$ REGR | S1 | S2 | S3 | D1 | D2 | 7－2－3 |
| INRR | Input register read | $\mid \longmapsto$ INRR | S1 | S2 | S3 | D1 | D2 | 7－2－3 |
| REGW | Single register write | $\longrightarrow \longmapsto$ REGW | D1 | D2 | S 1 | S2 |  | 7－2－3 |
| MRGW | Multi－register write | －けMRGW | D1 | D2 | D3 | S1 | S2 | 7－2－3 |
| Free Communication |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| SEND | Send data | $\mid \vdash$ SEND | S1 | S 2 | n |  |  | 7－3－2 |
| RCV | Receive data | $\longrightarrow \longmapsto \mathrm{RCV}$ | S1 | S2 | n |  |  | 7－3－2 |
| CAN－bus Communication |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| CCOLR | Read coil | － | S1 | S2 | S3 | D |  | 7－4－4 |
| CCOLW | Write coil | $\downarrow \vdash$ CCOLW | V D1 | D2 | D3 | S |  | 7－4－4 |
| CREGR | Read register | － | S1 | S2 | S3 | D |  | 7－4－4 |
| CREGW | Write register | いい CREGW | D1 | D2 | D3 | S |  | 7－4－4 |

## 7-1. Summary

XC2-PLC, XC3-PLC, XC5-PLC main units can fulfill your requirement on communication and network. They not only support simple network (Modbus protocol, free communication protocol), but also support those complicate network. XC2-PLC, XC3-PLC, XC5-PLC offer communication access, with which you can communicate with the devices (such as printer, instruments etc.) that have their own communication protocol.

XC2-PLC, XC3-PLC, XC5-PLC all support Modbus protocol, free protocol these communication function, XC5-PLC also have CANbus function.

## 7-1-1. COM port

## COM Port

There are 2 COM ports (Port1, Port2) on XC3 series PLC basic units, while there are 3 COM ports on XC5 series PLC main units. Besides the same COM ports (COM1, COM2), they have also CAN COM port.

COM 1 (Port1) is the program port, it can be used to download the program and connect with the other devices. The parameters (baud rate, data bit etc.) of this COM port are fixed, can't be re-set.

COM 2 (Port2) is communication port, it can be used to download program and connect with the other devices. The parameters (baud rate, data bit etc.) of this COM port can be re-set via software.

Via BD cards, XC series PLC can expend other COM ports. These COM ports can be RS232 and RS485.


1, RS232 COM Port
I COM 1 Pin Definition:
COM 2
Pin Definition:


2 : PRG
4 : RxD
5: TxD
6 : VCC
8 : GND

Mini Din 8 pin female


4 : RxD
5: TxD
8 : GND

## 2. RS485 COM port:

About RS485 COM port, A is " + " signal, B is "-" signal.
The A, B terminals (RS485) on XC series PLC comes from COM2, so, you can't only use two at the same time.
3, CAN COM port:
CAN port can be used to realize CANbus communication. The pin terminals are "CAN+", "CAN-"

For the detailed CAN communication functions, please refer to " $6-8$. CAN bus function (XC5 series)"

## 7-1-2 . Communication Parameters

## Communication Parameters

| Station | Modbus Station number: $1 \sim 254, ~ 255$ (FF) is free format communication |
| :--- | :--- |
| Baud Rate | $300 \mathrm{bps} \sim 115.2 \mathrm{Kbps}$ |
| Data Bit | 8 bits data, 7 bits data |
| Stop Bit | 2 stop bits, 1 stop bit |
| Parity | Even, Odd, No check |

The default parameters of COM 1:
Station number is 1 , baud rate is 19200 bps, 8 data bit, 1 stop bit, Even

Parameters Setting

Set the parameters with the COM ports on XC series PLC;

| COM 1 | Number | Function | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | FD8210 | Communication mode | 255 is free format , <br> 1~254 bit is M odbus station number |
|  | FD8211 | Communication format | Baud rate, data bit, stop bit, parity |
|  | FD8212 | ASC timeout judgment time | Unit: ms, if set to be 0 , it means no timeout waiting |
|  | FD8213 | Reply timeout judgment time | Unit: ms, if set to be 0 , it means no timeout waiting |
|  | FD8214 | Start symbol | High 8 bits invalid |
|  | FD8215 | End symbol | High 8 bits invalid |
|  | FD8216 | Free format setting | 8/16 bits cushion, with/without start bit, with/without stop bit |


| COM 2 | FD8220 | Communication mode | 255 is free format , <br> 1~254 bit is M odbus station number |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | FD8221 | Communication format | Baud rate, data bit, stop bit, parity |
|  | FD8222 | ASC timeout judgment time | Unit: ms, if set to be 0 , it means no timeout waiting |
|  | FD8223 | Reply timeout judgment time | Unit: ms, if set to be 0 , it means no timeout waiting |
|  | FD8224 | Start symbol | High 8 bits invalid |
|  | FD8225 | End symbol | High 8 bits invalid |
|  | FD8226 | Free format setting | 8/16 bits cushion, with/without start bit, with/without stop bit |
| COM 3 | FD8230 | Communication mode | 255 is free format , <br> 1~254 bit is M odbus station number |
|  | FD8231 | Communication format | Baud rate, data bit, stop bit, parity |
|  | FD8232 | ASC timeout judgment time | Unit: ms, if set to be 0 , it means no timeout waiting |
|  | FD8233 | Reply timeout judgment time | Unit: ms, if set to be 0 , it means no timeout waiting |
|  | FD8234 | Start symbol | High 8 bits invalid |
|  | FD8235 | End symbol | High 8 bits invalid |
|  | FD8236 | Free format setting | 8/16 bits cushion, with/without start bit, with/without stop bit |

$※ 1$ : The PLC will be Off line after changing the communication parameters, use "stop when reboot" function to keep PLC online;
$※ 2$ : After modifying the data with special FLASH data registers, the new data will get into effect after reboot;

Set the communication parameters:

FD8211 (COM 1)/FD8221 (COM 2)/FD8231 (COM 3)


FD8216 (COM 1)/FD8226 (COM 2)/FD8236 (COM 3)


## 7-2 . M ODBUS Communication

## 7-2-1 . Function

XC series PLC support both Modbus master and Modbus slave
Master format: When PLC is set to be master, PLC sends request to other slave devices via Modbus instructions, other devices response the master.
Slave format: when PLC is set to be slave, it can only response with other master devices.
The default status of XC-PLC is Modbus slave.

## 7-2-2 . Address

For the soft component's number in PLC which corresponds with Modbus address number, please see the following table:

Coil Space: (M odbus ID prefix is " $0 x$ " )

| Bit ID | M odbusI D <br> (decimal K ) | M odbus ID <br> (Hex. H) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| M0~M7999 | $0 \sim 7999$ | $0 \sim 1 \mathrm{~F} 3 \mathrm{~F}$ |
| X0~X1037 | $16384 \sim 16927$ | $4000 \sim 421 F$ |
| Y0~Y1037 | $18432 \sim 18975$ | $4800 \sim 4 \mathrm{A1F}$ |
| S0~S1023 | $20480 \sim 21503$ | $5000 \sim 53 \mathrm{FF}$ |
| M8000~M8511 | $24576 \sim 25087$ | $6000 \sim 61 \mathrm{FF}$ |
| T0~T618 | $25600 \sim 26218$ | $6400 \sim 666 \mathrm{~A}$ |
| C0~C634 | $27648 \sim 28282$ | $6 \mathrm{C} 00 \sim 6 \mathrm{E} 7 \mathrm{~A}$ |

Register Space: (Modbus ID prefix is " 4 x ")

| Word ID | M odbusI D <br> (decimal K) | M odbus ID <br> (Hex. H) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D0~D7999 | $0 \sim 7999$ | $0 \sim 1$ F3F |
| TD0~TD618 | $12288 \sim 12906$ | $3000 \sim 326 \mathrm{~A}$ |
| CD0~CD634 | $14336 \sim 14970$ | $3800 \sim 3$ A7A |
| D8000~D8511 | $16384 \sim 16895$ | $4000 \sim 41$ FF |
| FD0~FD5000 | $18432 \sim 23432$ | $4800 \sim 5$ B88 |
| FD8000~FD8511 | $26624 \sim 27135$ | $6800 \sim 69$ FF |

※1: Bit soft components X, Y are in Octal form, the left are in decimal form;

## 7-2-3. Communication Instructions

Modbus instructions include coil read/write, register read/write; below, we describe these instructions in details:
y Coil Read [COLR]

1, Instruction Summary
Read the specified station's specified coil status to the local PLC;

| Coil read [COLR] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | COLR | $32 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | - |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally ON/OFF coil | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software <br> Requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the remote communication station or soft component's ID | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| S2 | Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's ID | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| S3 | Specify the coil number or soft component's ID | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| D1 | Specify the start ID of the local receive coils | bit |
| D2 | Specify the serial port's number | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |

3, suitable soft components
Word

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | constant |  | module |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | K/H | ID | QD |  |
| S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
| S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
| S3 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
| D2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | K |  |  |  |

Bit

| Operands | Operands |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| D1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |


| Function | X0 | S1. |  | S2. | S3. | D1. | D2. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | COLR | K1 | K500 | K3 | M1 | K2 |

I Read coil instruction, Modbus code is $01 \mathrm{H}_{\text {。 }}$
| Serial Port: K1~K3

## Input Coil Read [INPR ]

1, Instruction
Read the specified station's specified input coils into local coils:

| Input coil read [INPR] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | INPR | 32 bits instruction | - |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally ON/OFF, rising edge | Suitable Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |


| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software <br> Requirement | - |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the remote communication station or soft component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| S2 | Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| S3 | Specify the coil number or soft component's ID | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| D1 | Specify the start ID of the local receive coils | bit |
| D2 | Specify the serial port's number | 16 bits, BIN |

3, Suitable Soft Components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { constant } \\ & \hline \mathrm{K} / \mathrm{H} \end{aligned}$ | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S3 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | K |  |  |

Bit

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| D1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |


| Function | X0 | S1 |  | S2.) | S3. | D1. | D2. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | INPR | K1 | K500 | K3 | M1 | K2 |

I Instruction to read the input coil, Modbus code is 02 H
I Serial port: K1~K3
I When X0 is ON, execute COLR or INPR instruction, set communication flag after execution the instruction; when X 0 is OFF , no operation. If error happens during communication, resend automatically. If the errors reach 3 times, set the communication error flag. The user can check the relative registers to judge the error;

## $\ddot{y} \quad$ single coil write[COLW]

## 1, summary

Write the local coil status to the specified station's specified coil;

| Single coil write [COLW] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | COLW | 32 <br> instruction | - |  |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally ON/OFF, rising edge | Suitable Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |  |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software <br> Requirement | - |  |

## 2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D1 | Specify the remote communication station or soft component's ID | 16bits, BIN |
| D2 | Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| S1 | Specify the start ID of the local receive coils | bit |
| S2 | Specify the serial port's number | 16 bits, BIN |

3, suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | constant <br> K/H | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | D1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | K |  |  |

Bit

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |



I Write the single coil, Modbus code is 05 H
I Serial port: K1~K3

## シ̈ multi-coil write[MCLW]

## 1, Summary

Write the local multi-coil status into the specified station's specified coil;

```
Multi-coil write [MCLW]
```

| $16 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | MCLW | 32 bits instruction | - |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally ON/OFF, rising edge | Suitable Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software <br> Requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D1 | Specify the remote communication station or soft component's <br> ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| D2 | Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| D3 | Specify the coil number or soft component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| S1 | Specify the start ID of the local receive coils | bit |
| S2 | Specify the serial port's number | 16 bits, BIN |

3, Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | constant <br> K/H | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | D1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D3 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | K |  |  |

Bit

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |
| S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |


| Function | X0 |  | 兂 | (D2.) | D3. | S1. | 52. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | MCLW | K1 | K500 | K3 | M1 | K2 |

I Instruction to write the multiply coils, Modbus code is 0 FH
I Serial port: K1~K3
I When X0 is ON, execute COLW or MCLW instruction, set communication flag after execution the instruction; when X 0 is OFF, no operation. If error happens during communication, resend automatically. If the errors reach 4 times, set the communication error flag. The user can check the relative registers to judge the error;

## 1, Summary

Read the specified station's specified register to the local register;

| Register read [REGR] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | REGR | 32 <br> instruction | - |  |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally ON/OFF, rising edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |  |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software <br> Requirement | - |  |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the remote communication station or soft component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| S2 | Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| S3 | Specify the coil number or soft component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| D1 | Specify the start ID of the local receive coils | bit |
| D2 | Specify the serial port's number | 16 bits, BIN |

3, Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{array}{l\|} \hline \text { constant } \\ \hline \text { K/H } \end{array}$ | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S3 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D1 | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | D2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | K |  |  |



I Instruction to read the REGISTERS, Modbus code is 03 H
I Serial port: K1~K3

## $\ddot{y} \quad$ Read Input Register [INR R]

## 1, Summary

Read the specified station's specified input register to the local register

| Read Input Register [INRR] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | INRR bits | - |  |  |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally ON/OFF, rising edge | 32 <br> instruction | Suitable <br> Models |  |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software <br> Requirement | - |  |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the remote communication station or soft component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| S2 | Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| S3 | Specify the coil number or soft component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| D1 | Specify the start ID of the local receive coils | bit |
| D2 | Specify the serial port's number | 16 bits, BIN |

3, Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | constant <br> K/H | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S3 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D1 | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | D2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | K |  |  |



I Instruction to read the input registers, Modbus code is 04 H
I Serial port: K1~K3
I When X0 is ON, execute REGR or INRR instruction, set communication flag after execution the instruction; when X 0 is OFF, no operation. If error happens during communication, resend automatically. If the errors reach 4 times, set the communication error flag. The user can check the relative registers to judge the error;

1, summary
Instruction to write the local specified register into the specified station's specified register;

| Single register write [REGW] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 <br> instruction | REGW | 32 <br> instruction | - |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally ON/OFF, rising edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software <br> Requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D1 | Specify the remote communication station or soft <br> component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| D2 | Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's <br> ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| S1 | Specify the start ID of the local receive coils | 16 bits, BIN |
| S2 | Specify the serial port's number | 16 bits, BIN |

3, Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | D1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | - | - |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | S2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | K |  |  |



I Write the single register, Modbus code is 06 H
I Serial port: K1~K3

## $\ddot{y} \quad$ M ulti-register write[M RGW]

1, Summary
Instruction to write the local specified register to the specified station's specified register;

| Multi-register write [MRGW] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | MRGW | $32 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | - |  |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally ON/OFF , rising <br> edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |  |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software <br> Requirement | - |  |

## 2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D1 | Specify the remote communication station or soft <br> component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| D2 | Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's <br> ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| D3 | Specify the coil number or soft component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| S1 | Specify the start ID of the local receive coils | bit |
| S2 | Specify the serial port's number | 16 bits, BIN |

3, Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | D1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | S2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | K |  |  |


| Function | X0 | D1. |  | D2.) | D3. | S1. | S2. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | MRGW | K1 | K500 | K3 | D1 | K2 |

I Instruction to write the multiply registers, Modbus code is 10 H
I Serial port: K1~K3
I When X0 is ON, execute REGW or MRGW instruction, set communication flag after execution the instruction; when X 0 is OFF , no operation. If error happens during communication, resend automatically. If the errors reach 4 times, set the communication error flag. The user can check the relative registers to judge the error;

## 7-3. FREE FORM AT COMM UNICATION

## 7-3-1 . Communication mode

Free format communication transfer data in the form of data block, each block can transfer 128 bytes at most. Meanwhile each block can set a start symbol and stop symbol, or not set. Communication M ode:

| Start Symbol (1 byte) | Data Block (max. 128 bytes) | End Symbol (1 byte) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |

I Port1, Port2 or Port3 can realize free format communication
I Under free format form, FD8220 or FD8230 should set to be 255 (FF)
I Baud Rate: 300bps~115.2Kbps
I Data Format
Data Bit: 7bits, 8bits
Parity: Odd, Even, No Check
Stop bit: 1 bit, 2 bits
I Start Symbol: 1 bit
Stop Symbol: 1 bit
User can set a start/stop symbol, after set the start/stop symbol, PLC will automatically add this start/stop symbol when sending data; remove this start/stop symbol when receiving data.
I Communication Format: 8 bits, 16 bits
If choose 8 bits buffer format to communicate, in the communication process, the high bytes are invalid, PLC only use the low bytes to send and receive data.
If choose 16 bits buffer format to communicate, when PLC is sending data, PLC will send low bytes before sending higher bytes

## 7-3-2 . Instruction form

$\ddot{y} \quad$ Send data [SEND]

## 1, Summary

Write the local specified data to the specified station's specified ID;

| Send data [SEND] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 <br> instruction | SEND | 32 <br> instruction | - |  |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally <br> edge | ON/OFF , rising | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software <br> Requirement | - |  |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |


| S1 | Specify the start ID of local PLC | 16 bits, BIN |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S2 | Specify the ASC number to send or soft component's ID | 16 bits, BIN |
| n | Specify the COM port Nr. | 16 bits, BIN |

3, Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | constant | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | K/H | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | n | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | K |  |  |



I Data send instruction, send data on the rising edge of M0;
I Serial port: K2~K3
I When sending data, set "sending" flag M8132 (COM2) ON


## ÿ Receive Date[RCV]

## 1, Summary

Write the specified station's data to the local specified ID;

| Receive data [RCV] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 <br> instruction | RCV | 32 <br> instruction | - |  |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally <br> edge | ON/OFF , rising | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software <br> Requirement | - |  |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the start ID of local PLC | 16 bits, BIN |
| S2 | Specify the ASC number to receive or soft component's ID | 16bits, BIN |
| n | Specify the COM port Nr. | 16bits, BIN |

3, Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { constant } \\ & \hline \mathrm{K} / \mathrm{H} \end{aligned}$ | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | S2 | - | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | n |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |



I Data receive instruction, receive data on the rising edge of M0;
I Serial port: K2~K3
I When receiving data, set "receiving" flag M8134(COM2) ON

$※ 1$ : If you require PLC to receive but not send, or receive before send, you need to set the communication timeout as 0 ms

## 7-4. CAN Bus Functions

## 7-4-1. Brief Introduction of CAN-bus

XC5 series PLC support CANbus bus function. Below we will give some basic concept on CANbus;


CAN (Controller Area Network) belongs to industrial area bus category. Compared with common communication bus, CAN bus data communication has performance of outstanding dependability, real time ability and flexibility.
CAN controller works under multi-master format. In the network, each node can send data to bus according to the bus visit priority. These characters enable each node in CAN bus network to have stronger data communication real time performance, and easy to construct redundant structure, improve the system's dependability and flexibility.

In CANBUS network, any node can initiatively send message at any time to any other node, no master and no slave. Flexibility communication, it's easy to compose multi-device backup system, distributing format monitor, control system. To fulfill different real time requirement, the nodes can be divided to be different priority level. With non-destroy bus arbitrament technology, when two nodes send message to the network at the same time, the low level priority node initiatively stop data sending, while high level priority node can continue transferring data without any influence. So there is function of node to node, node to multi-node, bureau broadcasting sending/receiving data. Each frame's valid byte number is 8 , so the transfer time is short, the probability ratio is low.

## 7-4-2 . External Wiring

CAN-Bus Communication Port: CAN + , CAN -
The wiring among each node of CAN bus is shown in the following graph; at the two ends, add 120 ohm middle-terminal resistors.


## 7-4-3. CAN Bus Network Form

There are two forms of CAN bus network: one is instructions communication format; the other is internal protocol communication format. These two forms can work at the same time $\ddot{y}$ Instructions communication format This format means, in the local PLC program, via CAN-bus instructions, execute bit or word reading/writing with the specified remote PLC.
$\ddot{y}$ Internal protocol communication format
This format means, via setting of special register, via configure table format, realize allude with each other among PLC's certain soft component's space. In this way, realize PLC source sharing in CAN-bus network.

## 7-4-4. CAN-bus Instructions

## Read Coil [CCOLR]

1, Instruction Description
Function : Read the specified station's specified coil status into the local specified coil.

| Read Coil [CCOLR] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | CCOLR | 32 <br> instruction | - |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally ON/OFF, rising <br> edge activates | Suitable <br> Models | XC5 |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software <br> Requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify remote communication station ID or soft component's <br> number; | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| S2 | Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's number; | 16 bits, BIN |
| S3 | Specify the coil number or soft component's number; | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| D | Specify the local receive coil's start ID | bit |

3, Suitable Soft Components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\frac{\text { Constant }}{\text { K/H }}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S3 | - | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |

Bit

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| D | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |



I Execute CCOLR instruction when X 0 changes from OFF to ON; read the four coils data of remote station 2th, coil's start ID K20 to local M20 ~ M23.

## ÿ Write the Coil [CCOLW]

## 1, Summary

Write the local specified multi-coils status into the specified station's specified coils;

| Write the coil [CCOLW] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| 16 <br> instruction | CCOLW | 32 <br> instruction | - |  |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally <br> edge | ON/OFF , rising | Suitable <br> Models |  |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software <br> Requirement | - |  |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D1 | Specify remote communication station ID or soft <br> component's number; | 16 bit, BIN |
| D2 | Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's <br> number; | 16 bit, BIN |
| D3 | Specify the coil number or soft component's number; | 16 bit, BIN |
| S | Specify the local receive coil's start ID | bit |

3, Suitable soft components

Word

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | constant |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | module |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | K/H | $\mathbb{D}$ | QD |  |
| S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
| S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
| S3 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |

Bit

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| D | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |



I Execute CCOLW instruction when X0 changes from OFF to ON; write the local M20~M23 to the remote station 2th, coil's start ID K20.

## $\ddot{y} \quad$ Read Register [CREGR ]

## 1, Summary

Read the specified station's specified register to the local specified register;

| Read register [CREGR] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits <br> instruction | CREGR | 32 bits instruction | - |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally ON/OFF, rising edge | Suitable Models | XC5 |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software Requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D1 | Specify remote communication station ID or soft component's <br> number; | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| D2 | Specify the remote register's start ID or soft component's number; | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| D3 | Specify the register number or soft component's number; | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| S | Specify the local receive coil's start ID | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |

3, Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | constant <br> K/H | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | - | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | - |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | - |  |  |  |  | - |  |  |
|  | S3 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |



I Execute CREGR instruction when X0 changes from OFF to ON; read the remote station 2th, coil's start ID K20 to the local D20~D23
y $\quad$ Write the R egister [CRE GW]

## 1, Summary

Write the specified local input register to the specified station's specified register;

| Write the register [CREGW] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16 bits <br> instruction | CREGW | 32 <br> instruction | - |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally ON/OFF, rising edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC5 |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software <br> Requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D1 | Specify remote communication station ID or soft <br> component's number; | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| D2 | Specify the remote register's start ID or soft <br> component's number; | 16 bits, BIN |
| D3 | Specify the register number or soft component's <br> number; | 16 bits, BIN |
| S | Specify the local receive coil's start ID | 16 bits, BIN |

3, Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { constant } \\ & \hline \text { K/H } \end{aligned}$ | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S3 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | D | - |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |



I Execute CREGW instruction when X0 changes from OFF to ON; write the local D20~D23 to the remote station 2th, coil's start ID K20.

## 7-4-5. Communication Form of I nternal Protocol

## Function

I Open/close the internal protocol communication function
Set the value in register FD8350:
0: do not use CAN internal protocol communication;
1: use CAN internal protocol communication
CAN internal protocol communication is default to be closed;
I Set the communication parameters
See the setting methods with baud rate, station number, sending frequency etc. in the below table:
Define the configure items:
Internal protocol communication is to communicate via setting the configure items;
The configure items include: read the bit, read the word, write the bit, write the word;
The configure form:
Step 1, add the four configure items number separately: FD8360—read the bit items, FD8361—read the word items, FD8362—write the bit items, FD8363-write the word items

Step 2, set each configure item's communication object, each item includes four parameter: remote node's station, remote node's object ID, local object's ID , number; the correspond register ID is: FD8370~FD8373 represents Nr. 1 item; , FD8374~FD8377 represents Nr. 2 item, …..FD9390~FD9393 represents Nr. 256 item ; totally we can set 256 items; see table below:

Communication Setting

| Nr. | Function | Description |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| FD8350 | CAN communication mode | 0 represents not use; 1 represents internal protocol |
| FD8351 | CAN baud rate | See CAN baud rate setting table |
| FD8352 | Self CAN station | For CAN protocol use (the default value is 1) |
| FD8354 | Configured <br> frequency | The set value's unit is ms, represents "send every ms" <br> if set to be 0, it means send every cycle, the default value is <br> 5 ms |


| FD8360 | Read bit number |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| FD8361 | Read word number |  |
| FD8362 | write bit number |  |
| FD8363 | write word number |  |
| FD8370 | Remote node's ID | The Nr. 1 item's configuration |
| FD8371 | Remote node's object ID |  |
| FD8372 | Local object's ID |  |
| FD8373 | Number |  |
| ...... | ...... | ...... |
| FD9390 | Remote node's ID | The Nr. 256 item's configuration |
| FD9391 | Remote node's object ID |  |
| FD9392 | Local object's ID |  |
| FD9393 | Number |  |



Baud Rate Setting

| M8240 | CAN self check <br> error flag | Set 1 if error; set 0 if <br> correct |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| M8241 | Error flag of CAN <br> configure | Set 1 if error; set 0 if <br> correct |
| M8242 | Automatically set to be 1, then <br> recover the control <br> after CAN bus error <br> recover after error <br> happens; <br> If set to be 1, then <br> CAN stops working <br> after error happens; <br> The default value is 1, <br> this flag is not <br> power-off retentive |  |


| FD8351 <br> value | Baud <br> Rate <br> $(B P S)$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 1 K |
| 1 | 2 K |
| 2 | 5 K |
| 3 | 10 K |
| 4 | 20 K |
| 5 | 40 K |
| 6 | 50 K |
| 7 | 80 K |
| 8 | 100 K |
| 9 | 150 K |
| 10 | 200 K |
| 11 | 250 K |
| 12 | 300 K |
| 13 | 400 K |
| 14 | 500 K |
| 15 | 600 K |
| 16 | 800 K |
| 17 | 1000 K |


|  |  | 0: no error <br> 2: initialize error <br> D8240 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | CAN error information | 30: error <br> 31: error alarm <br> 32: data overflow |
| D8241 | The configure item's Nr. which has error | Show the first number of error <br> configure item |
| D8242 | Data package number sent every second | - |
| D8243 | Data package number received every second | - |
| D8244 | CAN communication error count | - |

## 7-4-6 . CAN Free Format Communication

$\ddot{y} \quad$ CAN Sending [CSEND]

1, Instructions Summary
Write the specified data from the unit to a specified address (data transfer in one unit)

| CAN Sending [CSEND] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 16bits <br> instruction | CSEND | 32 bits <br> instruction | - |
| Executing <br> Condition | Normally ON/OFF, Rising edge | Suitable <br> Models | XC5 |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | Software <br> Requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | specify the ID number to send the data package | $16 \mathrm{bits}$, BIN |
| S2 | specify the first ID number of sent data or soft <br> component locally | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| S3 | specify the byte number of sent data | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |

3, Suitable soft components

| Word type | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | constant <br> K/H | module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | S3 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |

## Functions and A ctions

| M0 | S1.) |  | S2.) | (53.) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | CSEND | K100 | D0 | K4 |

I Instruction to enable data sending, send data at every rising edge of M0
I ID number of sending data package is 100, 4 bytes data, the first ID is in D0
I 8 bits data transfer: the transferred data is: D0L, D1L, D2L, D3L (D0L means the low byte of D0)
I 16 bits data transfer: the transferred data is: D0L, D0H, D1L, D1H (D0H means the high byte of D0)

| MO |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | CSEND | D10 | D0 | D20 |

I The ID of sending data package is specified by D10, the data number is specified by D20, the first ID is in D0;
I 8 bits data transfer: the transferred data is: D0L, D1L, D2L, D3L(D0L means the low byte of D0)
I 16 bits data transfer: the transferred data is: D0L, D0H, D1L, D1H (D0H means the high byte of D0)
I Standard Frame: the valid bits of the data package ID number that is specified by D10 is the low 11 bits, the left bits are invalid;
I The expansion frame: the valid bits of the data package ID number that is specified by D10 is the low 29 bits, the left bits are invalid;

I The maximum data bits specified by D20 is 8 , if exceeds 8 , the instruction will send only 8 bits;

## y CAN Receive[CRECV]

1, Instructions Summary
Write the specified data in one unit to a specified address in another unit (data transfers between different units)

| CAN Receive [CRECV] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | CRECV bits | - |  |  |
| Executing <br> Condition | Normally ON/OFF , Rising <br> edge | 32 <br> instruction | Suitable <br> Models |  |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | - | XC5 |  |  |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |


| S1 | specify the ID number to receive the data package | $16 \mathrm{bits}$, BIN |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S2 | specify the first ID number of received soft <br> component locally | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| S3 | specify the byte number of received data | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |
| S4 | specify the soft component's start ID number of ID <br> filter code | $16 \mathrm{bits}, \mathrm{BIN}$ |

3, Suitable soft components


## Functions and A ctions



I The 32 bits memory combined by [D1, D0] (D0 is low byte, D1 is high byte) is used to stock ID number of the received data package. The received data length is stored in D20. The data content is stored in registers start from D10. D30 specifies the received ID filter code; if the received data doesn't fit the filter codes, then it will keep the RECV status;
I ID filter code: D30 specifies the start address of ID filter codes; the instruction specifies two groups of filter codes, occupy D30~D37 zone;

| Filter Code | Memory | Description | Example |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| The first group | $\begin{aligned} & \text { D31, } \\ & \text { D30 } \end{aligned}$ | D30 low bytes, D31 high bytes, they compose a 32 bits mask code | D30=0xFFFF, D31=0x0000, then the mask code is $0 x 0000 \mathrm{FFFF}$ D30 $=0 \times 1234$, D31 $=0 \times 0000$, then filter value is $0 x 00001234$ <br> If ID and $0 x 0000 \mathrm{FFFF}$ equals 0x00001234, the pass the first group of filter. If the ID pass any of two groups, the allow the reception |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { D33, } \\ & \text { D32 } \end{aligned}$ | D32 low bytes, D33 high bytes, they compose a 32 bits filter value |  |
| The first group | $\begin{aligned} & \text { D35, } \\ & \text { D34 } \end{aligned}$ | D34 low bytes, D35 high bytes, they compose a 32 bits mask code |  |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { D37, } \\ & \text { D36 } \end{aligned}$ | D36 low bytes, D37 high bytes, they compose a 32 bits filter |  |

 frame fulfills ID mask codes, the standard frame and the expansion frames can be all received. When receive the standard frame, the ID bits is 11 , but will still occupy the 32 bits memory combined by [D1,D0]
I 8 bits data transfer: the transfer data is: D0L, D1L, D2L, D3L $\cdots \cdots$ (D0L means the low byte of D0)
I 16 bits data transfer: the transfer data is: D0L, D0H, D1L, D1H $\cdots \cdots$ (D0H means the high byte of D0)

## $\ddot{y} \quad$ R elate Special Soft Components List

1, System FD8000 Setting

| ID | Function | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| FD8350 | CAN Mode | 0: not usable <br> 1: XC-CAN network <br> 2: Free format FREE |
| FD8351 | CAN baud rate | $0,1 \mathrm{KBPS}$ initial value, actual is 5 KBPS . <br> $1,2 \mathrm{KBPS}$ initial value, actual is 5 KBPS . <br> $2,5 \mathrm{KBPS}$ initial value <br> 3 , 10KBPS initial value <br> 4, 20KBPS initial value <br> $5,40 \mathrm{KBPS}$ initial value <br> $6,50 \mathrm{KBPS}$ initial value <br> 7, 80 KBPS initial value <br> $8,100 \mathrm{KBPS}$ initial value <br> $9,150 \mathrm{KBPS}$ initial value <br> 10, 200KBPS initial value <br> 11, 250KBPS initial value <br> $12,300 \mathrm{KBPS}$ initial value <br> 13, 400KBPS initial value <br> $14,500 \mathrm{KBPS}$ initial value <br> $15,600 \mathrm{KBPS}$ initial value <br> $16,800 \mathrm{KBPS}$ initial value <br> $17,1000 \mathrm{KBPS}$ initial value |
| FD8358 | CAN free format mode | low 8 bits: 0 -standard frame . low 8 bits: 1-expansion frame high 8 bits: $0-8$ bits data store high 8 bits: $1-16$ bits data store |
| FD8359 | CAN accept timeout time | for free format using, unit: ms |
|  | CAN send timeout time | fixed to be 5 ms |

2, System M8000 flag

| ID | Function | Description |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| M8240 | CAN error flag | ON: error happens <br> OFF: normal <br> if set M8242 as ON, and manually set M8240 as <br> ON, this will enable CAN reset |
| M8241 | CAN node dropped off <br> flag | XC-CAN mode valid <br> ON: certain node/nodes are dropped off <br> OFF: Normal |
| M8242 | do reset or not if CAN <br> error happens | ON: CAN reset automatically when error <br> happens <br> OFF: take no operation when error happens |
| M8243 | CAN send/accept finished <br> flag | FREE mode valid <br> ON: receive/accept finish <br> reset ON automatically when starting <br> send/accept |
| m8244 | CAN send/accept timeout <br> flag | FREE mode valid <br> ON: send/accept timeout <br> Set OFF automatically when starting to <br> send/accept |

3, System D8000

| ID | Function | Description |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D8240 | CAN error information | 0: no error <br> $2:$ initializing error <br> $30:$ CAN bus error <br> $31:$ error alarm <br> $32:$ data overflow |
| D8241 | configure item number when <br> error happens | XC-CAN valid |
| D8242 | data package number sent <br> every second | both XC-CAN and FREE modes are <br> valid |
| D8243 | data package number <br> accepted every second | both XC-CAN and FREE modes are <br> valid |
| D8244 | CAN communication error <br> counter | correspond with M8240 <br> at every CAN error, M8240 will be set <br> ON one time, D8244 increase 1 |

$\qquad$

## 8 <br> PID Control Function

In this chapter, we mainly introduce the applications of PID instructions for XC series PLC basic units, including: call the instructions, set the parameters, items to notice, sample programs etc.

8-1. Brief Introduction of The Functions

8-2. Instruction Formats

## 8-3. Parameter Setting

8-4. Auto Tune M ode

8-5. Advanced M ode

8-6.Application Outlines

8-7. Sample Programs

## 8-1. Brief Introductions of The Functions

PID instruction and auto tune function are added into XC series PLC basic units (Version 3.0 and above). Via auto tune method, users can get the best sampling time and PID parameters and improve the control precision.

The previous versions can not support PID function on basic units unless they extend analog module or BD cards. PID instruction has brought many facilities to the users.

1. The output can be data form $D$ and on-off quantity $Y$, user can choose them freely when program.
2. Via auto tune, users can get the best sampling time and PID parameters and improve the control precision.
3. User can choose positive or negative movement via software setting. The former is used in heating control, the later is used in cooling control.
4. PID control separates the basic units with the expansions, this improves the flexibility of this function.

## 8-2 . Instruction Forms

1, Brief Introductions of the Instructions
Execute PID control instructions with the data in specified registers.

| PID control [PID] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | PID | $32 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | - |
| Executing <br> Condition | Normally ON/normally closed <br> coil activates | Suitable <br> Models | XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| Hardware <br> Condition | V3.0 or above | Software <br> Condition | V3.0 or above |

2, Operands

| Operands | Usage | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | set the ID Nr. of the target value (SV) | 16 bits, BIN |
| S2 | set the ID Nr. of the tested value (PV) | 16 bits, BIN |
| S3 | set the first ID Nr. of the control parameters | 16 bits, BIN |
| D | the ID Nr. of the operation resule (MV) or output port | 16 bits, BIN |

3, Suitable soft components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Constant |  | dule |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Type |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | K/H | ID | QD |
|  | S1 | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
|  | S2 | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |
|  | S3 | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | D | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |

Bit
Type

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| D |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |



I S3~ S3+ 43 will be occupied by this instruction, so please don't use them as the common data registers.

I This instruction executes when each sampling time interval comes.
I To the operation result $D$, the data registers are used to store PID output values; the output points are used to output the occupy ratio in the form of ON/OFF.
| PID control rules are shown as below:


$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{e}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{t})-\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{t})  \tag{1-1}\\
& \mathrm{u}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{Kp}[\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{t})+1 / \mathrm{Ti} £(\mathrm{t}) \mathrm{dt}+\mathrm{TD} \operatorname{de}(\mathrm{t}) / \mathrm{dt}] \tag{1-2}
\end{align*}
$$

Here, $\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{t})$ is warp, $\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{t})$ is the given value, $\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{t})$ is the actual output value, $\mathrm{u}(\mathrm{t})$ is the control value;

In function (1-2), Kp is the proportion coefficient, Ti is the integration time coefficient, and TD is the differential time coefficient.

The result of the operation:

1. Analog output: $\mathrm{MV}=$ digital form of $\mathrm{u}(\mathrm{t})$, the default range is $0 \sim 4095$.
2. Digital output: $\mathrm{Y}=\mathrm{T}^{*}[\mathrm{MV} / \mathrm{PID}$ output upper limit]. Y is the output's activate time within the control cycle. T is the control cycle, equals to the sampling time. PID output upper limit default value is 4095 .

## 8-3. Parameter s Setting

Users can call PID instruction in XCP Pro software directly and set the parameters in the window (see graph below), for the details please refer to XCPPro user manual. Users can also write the parameters into the specified registers by MOV instructions before PID operation.


For PID control instruction's relative parameters ID, please refer to the below table:

| ID | Function | Description | Memo |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| S3 | sampling time | 32 bits without sign | Unit: ms |
| S3+1 | sampling time | 32 bits without sign | Unit: ms |
| S3+2 | mode setting | bit0: <br> 0: Negative; 1 Negative; bit1 ~ bit6 not usable bit7: <br> 0: Manual PID; 1: auto tune PID bit8: <br> 1: auto tune successful flag bit9 ~ bit14 not usable bit15: <br> 0 : regular mode; 1 : advanced mode |  |
| S3+3 | Proportion Gain (Kp) | Range: $1 \sim 32767$ [\%] |  |
| S3+4 | Integration time (TI) | $0 \sim 32767$ [*100ms] | 0 is taken as no integral. |
| S3+5 | Differential time (TD) | 0 ~ 32767[*10ms] | 0 is taken as no differential. |
| S3+6 | PID operation zone | $0 \sim 32767$ | PID adjustment band width value. |
| S3+7 | control death zone | $0 \sim 32767$ | PID value keeps constant in death zone |
| S3+8 | PID auto tune cycle varied value | full scale AD value * (0.3~1\%) |  |
| S3+9 | PID auto tune overshoot permission | 0: enable overshoot 1:disable overshoot |  |
| S3+10 | current target value adjustment percent in auto tune finishing transition stage |  |  |
| S3+11 | current target value resident count in auto tune finishing transition stage |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline \mathrm{S} 3+12 \sim \\ & \mathrm{~S} 3+39 \end{aligned}$ | occupied by PID operation's internal process |  |  |
| Below is the ID of advanced PID mode setting |  |  |  |
| S3+40 | Input filter constant (a) | 0~99[\%] | 0: no input filter |
| S3+41 | Differential gain (KD) | $0 \sim 100$ [\%] | 0: no differential gain |
| S3+42 | Output upper limit value | -32767 ~ 32767 |  |
| S3+43 | Output lower limit value | -32767 ~ 32767 |  |

## 8-3-2 . Parameters Description

I M ovement Direction:
$\ddot{y}$ Positive movement: the output value MV will increase with the increasing of the detected value PV , usually used for cooling control.
$\ddot{y}$ Negative movement: the output value MV will decrease with the increasing of the detected value PV , usually used for heating control.

I ModeSetting
ÿ Common Mode:
The parameter's register zone is from S 3 to $\mathrm{S} 3+43$, S 3 to $\mathrm{S} 3+11$ needs to be set by users. $\mathrm{S} 3+12$ to $\mathrm{S} 3+43+12$ are occupied by the system, users can't use them.
ÿ Advanced Mode
The parameter's register zone is from S 3 to $\mathrm{S} 3+43$, S 3 to $(S 3+11)$ and $(S 3+40)$ to $(S 3+43)$ need to be set by users. ( $\mathrm{S} 3+12$ ) to ( $\mathrm{S} 3+39$ ) are occupied by the system, users can't use them.

I SampleTime[S3]
The system samples the current value according to certain time interval and compare them with the output value. This time interval is the sample time T . There is no requirement for T during AD output. T should be larger than one PLC scan period during port output. T value should be chosen among 100~1000 times of PLC scan periods.

I PID Operation Zone [S3+6]
PID control is entirely opened at the beginning and close to the target value with the highest speed (the defaulted value is 4095 ), when it entered into the PID computation range, parameters $\mathrm{Kp}, \mathrm{Ti}, \mathrm{TD}$ will be effective.
See graph below:


If the target value is 100 , PID operation zone is 10 , then the real PID's operation zone is from 90 to 110 .

## I Death Region [S3+7]

If the detected value changed slightly for a long time, and PID control is still in working mode, then it belongs to meanless control. Via setting the control death region, we can overcome this condition. See graph below:


Suppose: we set the death region value to be 10 . Then in the above graph, the difference is only 2 comparing the current value with the last value. It will not do PID control. The difference is 13 (more than death region 10) comparing the current value with the next value, this difference value is larger than control death region value, it will do the PID control with 135.

## 8-4 . Auto Tune M ode

If users do not know how to set the PID parameters, they can choose auto tune mode which can find the optimal control parameters (sampling time, proportion gain Kp , integral time Ti , differential time TD) automatically.
I Auto tune mode is suitable for these objectives: temperature, pressure; not suitable for liquid level and flow.
I Users can set the sampling cycle to be 0 at the beginning of the auto tune process then modify the value manually in terms of practical needs after the auto tune process is completed.
I Before doing auto tune, the system should be under the no-control steady state. Take the temperature for example, the detected temperature should be the same as the environment temperature.

To enter the auto tune mode, please set bit7 of $(S 3+2)$ to be 1 and turn on PID working condition.
If bit8 of $(\mathrm{S} 3+2)$ turn to 1 , it means the auto tune is successful.
I PID auto tune period value [ $\mathrm{S} 3+8$ ]
Set this value in $[53+8]$ during auto tune.
This value decides the auto tune performance, in a general way, set this value to be the AD result corresponding to one standard detected unit. The default value is 10 . The suggested setting range: full-scale AD result $\times 0.3 \sim 1 \%$.
User don't need to change this value. However, if the system is interfered greatly by outside, this value should be increased modestly to avoid wrong judgment for positive or negative movement. If this value is too large, the PID control period (sampling time) got from the auto tune process will be too long. As the result do not set this value too large.
※1: if users have no experience, please use the defaulted value 10 , set PID sampling time ( control period ) to be 0 ms then start the auto tune.

I PID auto tune overshooting permission setting [S3+9]
If set 0 , overshooting is permitted, the system can study the optimal PID parameters all the time. But in self-study process, detected value may be lower or higher than the target value, safety factor should be considered here.

If set 1 , overshooting is not permitted. For these objectives which have strict safety demand such as pressure vessel, set $[S 3+9]$ to be 1 to prevent from detected value seriously over the target value. In this process, if $[S 3+2]$ bit8 changes from 0 to 1 , it means the auto tune is successful and the optimal parameters are got; if [S3+2] is always 0 until [S3+2] bit7 changes from 1 to 0 , it means the auto tune is completed but the parameters are not the best and need to be modified by users.

I Every adjustment percent of current target value at auto tune process finishing transition stage [S3+10]

This parameter is effective only when $[S 3+9]$ is 1 .
If doing PID control after auto tune, small range of overshooting may be occurred. It is better to decrease this parameter to control the overshooting. But response delay may occur if this value is too small. The defaulted value is $100 \%$ which means the parameter is not effective. The recommended range is $50 \sim 80 \%$.

## Cutline Explanation:

Current target value adjustment percent is $2 / 3(S 3+10=67 \%)$, the original temperature of the system is $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, target temperature is $100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, the current target temperature adjustment situation is shown as below:

Next current target value $=$ current target value $+($ final target value - current target value $) \times 2 / 3$;
So the changing sequence of current target is $66^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 88^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 96^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 98^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 9{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$


I The stay times of the current target value at auto tune process finishing transition stage [S3+11]
This parameter is valid only when $[S 3+9]$ is 1 ;
If entering into PID control directly after auto tune, small range of overshoot may occur. It is good for preventing the overshoot if increasing this parameter properly. But it will cause response lag if this value is too large. The default value is 15 times. The recommended range is from 5 to 20 .

## 8-5. Advanced M ode

Users can set some parameters in advanced mode in order to get the better effect of PID control.
Enter into the advanced mode, please set $[\mathrm{S} 3+2]$ bit 15 to be 1 , or set it in the XCP Pro software.
I Input Filter constant
It will smooth the sampling value. The default value is $0 \%$ which means no filter.
I Differential Gain
The low pass filtering process will relax the sharp change of the output value. The default value is $50 \%$, the relaxing effect will be more obviously if increasing this value. Users do not need to change it.
I Upper-limit and lower-limit value
Users can choose the analog output range via setting this value.
Default value: lower- limit output=0
Upper -limit= 4095

## 8-6 . Application Outlines

I Under the circumstances of continuous output, the system whose effect ability will die down with the change of the feedback value can do self-study, such as temperature or pressure. It is not suitable for flux or liquid level.
I Under the condition of overshoot permission, the system will get the optimal PID parameters from self-study.
I Under the condition of overshoot not allowed, the PID parameters got from self-study is up to the target value, it means that different target value will produce different PID parameters which are not the optimal parameters of the system and for reference only.
I If the self-study is not available, users can set the PID parameters according to practical experience. Users need to modify the parameters when debugging. Below are some experience values of the control system for your reference:
u Temperature system:
P (\%) $2000 \sim 6000$, I (minutes) $3 \sim 10$, D (minutes) $0.5 \sim 3$
u Flux system: P (\%) 4000~10000, I (minutes) $0.1 \sim 1$
u Pressure system: $\mathrm{P}(\%) 3000 \sim 7000$, I (minutes) $0.4 \sim 3$
u Liquid level system: $\mathrm{P}(\%) 2000 \sim 8000$, I (minutes) $1 \sim 5$

## 8-7 . Program Example

PID Control Program is shown below:

// Move ID100 content into D10
// convert PID mode to be auto tune at the beginning of auto tune control starts or auto tune finish
// start PID, D0 is target value, D10 is detected value, from D4000 the zone is PID parameters area; output PID result via Y0
// PID control finish, close auto tune PID mode
// if auto tune is successful, and overshoot is permitted, close auto tune control bit, auto tune finish; If auto tune turns to be manual mode, and auto tune is not permitted, close auto tune control bit

Soft components function comments:
D4000.7: auto tune bit
D4002.8: auto tune successful sign
M0: normal PID control
M1: auto tune control
M2: enter into PID control after auto tune

## 9 <br> C Language Function Block

In this chapter, we focus on C language function block's specifications, edition, instruction calling, application points etc. we also attach the common Function list.

> 9-1 . Functions Summary

9-2 . Instrument Form

9-3. Operation Steps

9-4. Import and Export of the Functions

9-5. Edit the Function Block

9-6 . Example Program

9-7 . Application Points

9-8 . Function List

## 9-1. Summary

This is the new added function in XCPPro software. This function enable the customers to write function blocks with C language in XCPPo; and call the function blocks at any necessary place. This function supports most of C language functions, strength the program's security. As users can call the function at many places and call different functions, this function increase the programmer's efficiency greatly.

## 9-2. Instruction Format

1, Instruction Summary
Call the C language Func Block at the specified place

| Call the C language Func Block [NAME_C] |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | NAME_C | $32 \quad$ bits <br> Instruction | - |  |
| Execution <br> Condition | Normally ON/OFF, <br> Rising/Falling <br> activation | Edge <br> Models | XC1, XC2, XC3, XC5, <br> XCM |  |
| Hardware <br> Requirement | V3.0C and above | Software <br> Requirement | V3.0C and above |  |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | name of C Func Block, defined by the user | String |
| S2 | Correspond with the start ID of word W in C language <br> Function | 16bits, BIN |
| S3 | Correspond with the start ID of word B in C language <br> Function | 16bits, BIN |

3, Suitable Soft Components

| Word | Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\frac{\text { Constant }}{}$ | Module |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS |  | ID | QD |
|  | S2 | - |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Bit

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| S3 |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |



I The name is composed by numbers, letters and underlines, the first character can't be numbers, the name's length shouldn't longer than 8 ASC.
I The name can't be same with PLC's self instructions like LD,ADD,SUB,PLSR etc.
I The name can't be same with the func blocks exist in current PLC;

## 9-3. Operation Steps

1, Open PLC edit tool, in the left "Project" toolbar, choose "Func Block", right click it and choose"Add New Func Block"


2, See graph below, fill in the information of your function;


3, After new create the Func Block, you can see the edit interface as shown below:


I Parameters' transfer format: if call the Func Block in ladder, the transferred D and M is the start ID of W and B . Take the above graph as the example, start with D0 and M0, then W[0] is D0, W[10] is D10, B [ 0 is M0, B [10] is M10. If in the ladder the used parameters are D100, M100, then W[0] is D100, B [0] is M100. So, word and bit component's start address is defined in PLC program by the user.
I Parameter W: represent Word soft component, use in the form of data group. E.g. $\mathrm{W}[0]=1 ; \mathrm{W}[1]=\mathrm{W}[2]+\mathrm{W}[3]$; in the program, use according to standard C language
rules.
I Parameter B: represent Bit soft component, use in the form of data group. Support SET and RESET. E.g: $\mathrm{B}[0]=1 ; \mathrm{B}[1]=0$; And assignment, for example $B[0]=B[1]$ 。
I Double-word operation: add $D$ in front of W, e.g. $\operatorname{DW}[10]=100000$, it means assignment to the double-word W[10]W[11]
I Floating Operation: Support the definition of floating variable in the function, and execute floating operation;
I Function Library: In Func Block, users can use the Functions and Variables in function library directly. For the Functions and Variables in function library, see the list in Appendix.
I The other data type supported:

| BOOL; | /BOOL Quantity |
| :---: | :---: |
| INT8U; | //8 bits unsigned integral |
| NT8S; | //8 bits signed integral |
| INT16U | //16 bits unsigned integral |
| INT16S | //8 bits signed integral |
| INT32U | //32 bits unsigned integral |
| INT32S | //32 bits signed integral |
| FP32; | //Single precision Floating |
| FP64; | // Doubleprecision Floating |
|  | fine true |
| \#def | false |
| \#def | ne TRUE |
| \#d | ne FALSE 0 |

## 9-4 . Import and Export the Functions

1, Export
(1) Function: export the function as the file, then other PLC program can import to use;

(2) Export Format
a) Editable; export the source codes out and save as a file. If import again, the file is editable;
b) Not editable: don't export the source code, if import the file, it's not editable;

2, Import
Function; Import the exist Func Block file, to use in the PLC program;


Choose the Func Block, right click "Import Func Block From Disk", choose the correct file, then click OK.

## 9-5. Edit eh Func Blocks

Example: Add D0 and D1 in PLC's registers, then assign the value to D2;
(1) In "Project" toolbar, new create a Func Block, here we name the Func Block as ADD_2, then edit C language program;
(2) Click compile after edition

```
FLC1 - Ladder FuncBlock-AII_1
Information Export Compile
```



```
    FunctionBlockName: ADD 1
    Version: 1.0.0
    Author:
    UpdateTime: 2009-6-6 8:46:36
    Comment:
        W【2】=w【0】+w【1]
    void ADD_1! THORD TJ, BIT B !
    |
    W[2]=W[0]+W[1]
    |
```

Information
Error List Output
1.
[Error(ccom): . ./., ,'tmpiPriFuncB/ADD_1.c, line B] parse error at near '?

[Error(ccom)': ..'., (tmpi'PriFuncB/ADD_1.c, line 8] parse error at near '?



According to the information shown in the output blank，we can search and modify the grammar error in C language program．Here we can see that in the program there is no＂；＂sign behind $\mathrm{W}[2]=\mathrm{W}[0]+\mathrm{W}[1]$ ；

Compile the program again after modify the program．In the information list，we can corfirm that there is no grammar error in the program；

```
FLC1 - Ladder FuncBlock-kDD_1
\Infermation Erport Compile
        FunctionBlackName: LDD 1
        Version: 1.0.0
        Muthor:
        UpdateTime: 2009-6-6 10:31:47
        corment:
            W[2]=W[1]+\pi[0]
    void ADD_1; WORD |T, BIT E ;
    |
    W[2]=W[1]+W[0]:
    L
Information
Error List Output
    1.
    .4.,'tmplPriFunce\ADD_1.c
|
```

(3) Write PLC program, assign value 10 and 20 into registers D0, D1 separately, then call Func Block ADD_2, see graph below:

(4) Download program into PLC, run PLC and set M0.

(5) From Free Monitor in he toolbar, we can see that D2 changes to be 30, it means the assignment is successful;


## 9-6 . Program E xample

I Function: calculate CRC parity value via Func Block
I CRC calculation rules:
(1) Set 16 bits register (CRC register) $=$ FFFF H
(2) XOR (Exclusive OR) 8 bits information with the low byte of the 16 bits CRC register.
(3) Right shift 1 bit of CRC register, fill 0 in the highest bit.
(4) Check the right shifted value, if it is 0 , save the new value from step 3 into CRC register; if it is not 0 , XOR the CRC register value with A001 H and save the result into the CRC register.
(5) Repeat step $3 \& 4$ until all the 8 bits have been calculated.
(6) Repeat step2~5, then calculate the next 8 bits information. Until all the information has been calculated, the result will be the CRC parity code in CRC register.

I Edit C language Func Block program, see graph below:

```
9 void CRC_CHECK( WORD W , BIT B )
```

9 void CRC_CHECK( WORD W , BIT B )
10日 {
10日 {
int i,j,m,n;
int i,j,m,n;
unsigned int reg_crc=0xffifi,k;
unsigned int reg_crc=0xffifi,k;
for! i = 0 : i < W[0] ; i++ !
for! i = 0 : i < W[0] ; i++ !
<
<
reg_cre^=W[i+1];
reg_cre^=W[i+1];
for(j=0:j<8:j++)
for(j=0:j<8:j++)
{
{
if(reg eres0m01)
if(reg eres0m01)
reg_cre=(reg_crc>>1)^0xa001:
reg_cre=(reg_crc>>1)^0xa001:
else
else
reg_crc=reg_cro>>1;
reg_crc=reg_cro>>1;
,
,
}
}
m=W[0]+1;
m=W[0]+1;
n=W[0]+2;
n=W[0]+2;
k=reg_crcs0wff00;
k=reg_crcs0wff00;
\pi}[\textrm{m}]=\textrm{k}>>\textrm{B}
\pi}[\textrm{m}]=\textrm{k}>>\textrm{B}
W[n]=reg_crcenmaf;
W[n]=reg_crcenmaf;
%

```
                %
```

I Edit PLC ladder program,
D0: Parity data byte number;
D1~D5: Parity data's content, see graph below:


I Download to PLC, then RUN PLC, set M0, via Free Monitor, we can find that values in D6 and D7 are the highest and lowest bit of CRC parity value;

## 9-7 . Application Points

I When upload the PLC program in which there are some Func Blocks, the Func Blocks can't be uploaded, there will be an error say: There is an unknown instruction;
I In one Func Block file, you can write many subsidry functions, can call each other;
I Each Func Block files are independent, they can't call its owned functions;
I Func Block files can call C language library functions in form of floating, arithmetic like sin, $\cos , \tan$ etc.

## 9-8 . Function Table

The default function library

| Constant | Data | Description |
| :---: | :--- | :---: |
| _LOG2 | (double)0.693147180559945309417232121458 | Logarithm of 2 |
| _LOG10 | (double)2.3025850929940459010936137929093 | Logarithm of 10 |
| _SQRT2 | (double)1.41421356237309504880168872421 | Radical of 2 |
| _PI | (double)3.1415926535897932384626433832795 | PI |
| _PIP2 | (double)1.57079632679489661923132169163975 | PI/2 |
| _PIP2x3 | (double)4.71238898038468985769396507491925 | PI*3/2 |


| String F unction | Description |
| :--- | :--- |
| void * memchr(const void *s, int c, size_t n); | Return the first C position among n <br> words before s position |
| int memcmp(const void *s1, const void *s2, size_t n); | Compare the first n words of position <br> s1 and s2 |
| void * memcpy(void *s1, const void *s2, size_t n); | Copy n words from position s2 to <br> s1and return s1 |
| void * memset(void *s, int c, size_t n); | Replace the n words start from s <br> position with word c, and return <br> position s |
| char * strcat(char *s1, const char *s2); | Connect string ct behind string s |
| char * strchr(const char *s, int c); | Return the first word C position in <br> string s |
| int $\quad$ strcmp(const char *s1, const char *s2); | Compare string s1 and s2 |
| char * strcpy (char *s1, const char *s2); | Copy string s1 to string s2 |


| Double-precision math function | Single-precision math function | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| double acos(double x); | float acosf(float x); | Inverse cosine function. |
| double asin(double x ); | float asinf(float x); | Inverse sine function |
| double atan(double x ); | float atanf(float x); | Inverse tangent function |
| double atan2(double y, double x); | float atan2f(float y, float x ); | Inverse tangent value of parameter ( $\mathrm{y} / \mathrm{x}$ ) |
| double ceil(double x); | float ceilf(float x); | Return the smallest double integral which is greater or equal with parameter X |
| double $\cos$ (double x ); | float $\operatorname{cosf}($ float x$)$; | Cosine function |
| double $\cosh ($ double x ); | float coshf(float x); | Hyperbolic cosine function $\cosh (\mathrm{x})=\left(\mathrm{e}^{\wedge} \mathrm{x}+\mathrm{e}^{\wedge}(-\mathrm{x})\right) / 2$. |
| double exp(double x); | float expf(float x); | Exponent ( $\mathrm{e}^{\wedge} \mathrm{x}$ ) of a nature data |
| double fabs(double x); | float fabsf(float x); | Absolute value of parameter x |


| double floor(double x); | float floorf(float x); | Return the largets dounble integral which is smaller or equals with X |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| double fmod(double $x$, double y); | float fmodf(float x, float y); | If $y$ is not zero, return the reminder of floating $x / y$ |
| double frexp(double val, int _far *exp); | float $\operatorname{frexpf}($ float val, int _far *exp); | Break floating data $x$ to be mantissa and exponent $x=$ $m * 2^{\wedge} \exp$, return the mantissa of m , save the logarithm into exp. |
| double ldexp(double x , int exp); | float ldexpf(float x , int exp); | X multipy the (two to the power of n ) is $\mathrm{x}^{*} 2^{\wedge} \mathrm{n}$. |
| double $\log ($ double $x$ ); | float $\operatorname{logf(float~x);~}$ | Nature logarithm $\log x$ |
| double $\log 10$ (double x ); | float $\log 10 \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{float} \mathrm{x})$; | logarithm (log10x) |
| double modf(double val, double *pd); | float modff(float val, float *pd); | Break floating data X to be integral part and decimal part, return the decimal part, save the integral part into parameter ip. |
| double pow(double x , double y); | float powf(float x, float y); | Power value of parameter $\mathrm{y}\left(\mathrm{x}^{\wedge} \mathrm{y}\right)$ |
| double $\sin ($ double x ); | float $\operatorname{sinf}($ float x$)$; | sine function |
| double sinh(double x); | float sinhf(float x); | Hyperbolic sine function, $\sinh (x)=\left(e^{\wedge} x-e^{\wedge}(-x)\right) / 2$. |
| double sqrt(double x ); | float sqrtf(float x); | Square root of parameter X |
| double tan(double x ); | float tanf(float x); | tangent function. |
| double $\tanh$ (double x ); | float tanhf(float x ); | Hyperbolic tangent function, $\tanh (x)=\left(e^{\wedge} x-e^{\wedge}(-x)\right) /\left(e^{\wedge} 2+e^{\wedge}(-x)\right)$. |

## Special Function Instructions

In this chapter, we mainly introduce PWM pulse width modulation, frequency detect, precise time, interruption etc;

11-1 . PWM Pulse Width Modulation

11-2 . Frequency Detect

11-3 . Precise Time

11-4 . Interruption

Instructions List

| $M$ nemonic | Function | Circuit and soft components |  |  |  |  | Chapter |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Pulse W idth M odulation, Frequency Detection |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| PWM | Output pulse with the specified occupied ratio and frequency | $\longmapsto \longmapsto$ PWM | S1 | S2 | D |  | 11-1 |
| FRQM | Frequency Detection | $\longmapsto \longmapsto F R Q$ | S1 | D | S2 | S3 | 11-2 |
| Time |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| STR | Precise Time | $\longmapsto \vdash$ STR | D1 | D2 |  |  | 11-3 |
| STRR | Read Precise Time Register | $\longmapsto \longmapsto \text { STR }$ | S |  |  |  | 11-3 |
| STRS | Stop Precise Time | $\longmapsto \longmapsto-\mathrm{STRS}^{\text {S }}$ |  |  |  |  | 11-3 |
| Interruption |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| EI | Enable Interruption | EI |  |  |  |  | 11-4-1 |
| DI | Disable Interruption | DI |  |  |  |  | 11-4-1 |
| IRET | Interruption Return | IRET |  |  |  |  | 11-4-1 |

1, Instruction's Summary
Instruction to realize PWM pulse width modulation

| PWM pulse width modulation [PWM] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | PWM | 32 bits <br> instruction | - |
| execution <br> condition | normally ON/OFF coil | suitable <br> models | XC1, XC2, XC3, XC5, <br> XCM |
| hardware <br> requirement | - | software <br> requirement | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | specify the occupy ratio value or soft component's ID <br> number | 16 bits, BIN |
| S2 | specify the output frequency or soft component's ID <br> number | 16 bits, BIN |
| D | specify the pulse output port | bit |

3, Suitable Soft Components


| Function and Action | X0 | (S1.) |  | (32.) | (D. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | PWM | K100 | D10 | Y0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |

I The occupy ratio $\mathrm{n}: 1 \sim 255$
I Output pulse f: $0 \sim 72 \mathrm{KHz}$
I Pulse is output at Y000 or Y001 (Please use transistor output)
I The output occupy/empty ratio of $\mathrm{PMW}=\mathrm{n} / 256 \times 100 \%$
I PWM output use the unit of 0.1 Hz , so when set (S2) frequency, the set value is 10 times of the actual frequency (i.e. 10 f ). E.g. : to set the frequency as 72 KHz , then set value in (S2) is 720000 .

I When X000 is ON, output PWM wave ; when X000 is OFF, stop output. PMW output doesn't have pulse accumulation.


11-2 . Frequency Testing
1, Instruction's Summary
Instruction to realize frequency testing

| frequency testing [FRQM] |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $16 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | FRQM | $32 \quad$ bits <br> instruction | - |
| execution <br> condition | normally ON/OFF coil | suitable <br> models | XC1, XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| hardware <br> requirement | - | software <br> requirement | - |

## 2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| S1 | Specify the sampling pulse number or soft component's <br> ID number | 16 bits, BIN |
| S2 | Specify the frequency division choice's number | 16 bits, BIN |
| S3 | Specify the pulse input port | bit |
| D | specify the tested result's soft component's number | 16 bits, BIN |

3, Suitable Soft Components

Word

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | K/H | D | QD |
| S1 | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
| S2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |
| D | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Bit

| Operands | System |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| S3 | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |


| FUNCTIONS <br> ACTIONS | AND | X000 | S1.) |  | (D. | S2. | 53.) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | FRQM | K20 | D100 | K1 | X003 |

I S1: sampling pulse number: the number to calculate the pulse frequency
I D: tested result, the unit is Hz .
I S2: Frequency division choice. It can be K1 or K2;
When the frequency division is K 1 , the range is: no less than 9 Hz , precision range: $9 \sim 18 \mathrm{KHz}$.
When the frequency division is K 2 , the range: no less than 300 Hz , precision range: $300 \sim 400 \mathrm{KHz}$.

I In frequency testing, if choose frequency division as K2, the frequency testing precision is higher than frequency division K 1 .

I When X000 is ON, FRQM will test 20 pulse cycles from X003 every scan cycle. Calculate the frequency's value and save into D100. Test repeatedly. If the tested frequency's value is smaller than the test bound, then return the test value as 0 .

The pulse output to $X$ number:

| Model |  | X Number |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| XC2 series | $14 / 16 / 24 / 32 / 48 / 60$ I/O | X1, X6, X7 |
| XC3 series | 14 I/O | X2, X3 |
|  | $24 / 32$ I/O | X1, X11, X12 |
|  | $48 / 60$ I/O, XC3-19AR-E | X4, X5 |
|  | $24 / 32$ I/O | X3 |
|  | $48 / 60$ I/O | X1, X11, X12 |
| XCM series | $24 / 32$ I/O | X3 |

## 11-3 . Precise Time

1, Instruction List
Read and stop precise time when execute precise time;

| precise time [STR] |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 16 bits instruction | - | 32 bits instruction | STR |
| execution condition | edge activation | suitable models | XC1, XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| hardware requirement | - | software requirements | - |
| read precise time [STRR] |  |  |  |
| 16 bits instruction | - | 32 bits instruction | STRR |
| execution condition | edge activation | suitable models | XC1, XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| hardware requirement | V3.0e and above | software requirements | - |
| stop precise time [STRS] |  |  |  |
| 16 bits instruction | - | 32 bits instruction | STRS |
| execution condition | edge activation | suitable models | XC1, XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM |
| hardware requirement | V3.0e and above | software requirements | - |

2, Operands

| Operands | Function | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| D | Timer's Number | bit |
| D1 | Timer's Number | bit |
| D2 | specify timer's value or soft component's ID <br> number | 16 bits, BIN |

3, Suitable Soft Components

Word | operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | constant |  | module |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | D | FD | ED | TD | CD | DX | DY | DM | DS | $\mathrm{K} / \mathrm{H}$ | D | QD |  |  |
| D 2 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |

Bit

| operands | system |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  | X | Y | M | S | T | C | Dn.m |  |
| D |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |
| D1 |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |



D1：Timer＇s number．Range：T600～T618（T600，T602，T604‥T618，the number should be even）

D2：Time Value
I The precise timer works in form of 1 ms
I The precise timer is 32 bits，the count range is $0 \sim+2,147,483,647$ ．
I When X000 turns from OFF to ON，timer T600 starts to time，when time accumulation reaches 100 ms ，set T600；if X000 again turns from OFF to ON，timer T600 turns from ON to OFF，restart to time，when time accumulation reaches 100 ms ，T600 again reset．See graph below：
I When run STR instruction，reset the timer，then start to time；

See time graph below：


《read the precise time》，《stop precise time》


I When X000 changes from OFF to ON，move the current precise time value into TD600 immediately， no relate to the scan cycle；

I When M000 changes from OFF to ON，execute STRS instruction immediately，stop precise time and refresh the count value in TD600．No relate to the scan cycle；

## Precious Time Interruption

I When the precise time reaches the count value, generate a correspond interruption tag, execute some interruption subroutines.
I Start the precise time in precise time interruption;
I Every precise timer has its own interruption tag, see table below:


FEND

When X000 changes from OFF to be ON, timer T600 starts to time. When time accumulates to 100 ms , set T 600 ; meantime, generate an interruption, the program jumps to interruption tag I3001 and execute the subroutine.

## I3001



IRET

Interruption Tag cor respond with the Timer

| Timer's Nr. | Interruption Tag |
| :---: | :---: |
| T600 | I3001 |
| T602 | I3002 |
| T604 | I3003 |
| T606 | I3004 |
| T608 | I3005 |
| T610 | I3006 |
| T612 | I3007 |
| T614 | I3008 |
| T616 | I3009 |
| T618 | I3010 |

## 11-4 . Interruption

XC series PLC are equipped with interruption function. The interruption function includes external interruption and time interruption. Via interruption function we can dispose some special programs. This function is not effected by the scan cycle.

## 11-4-1 . External Interruption

The input terminals X can be used to input external interruption. Each input terminal corresponds with one external interruption. The input's rising/falling edge can activate the interruption. The interruption subroutine is written behind the main program (behind FEND). After interruption generates, the main program stops running immediately, turn to run the correspond subroutine. After subroutine running ends, continue to execute the main program.


## External Interruption's Port Definition

XC3-14

| Input <br> Terminal | Pointer Nr. |  | Disable the |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Rising <br> interruption | Falling <br> Interruption <br> instruction |  |
| X 7 | I 0000 | I 0001 | M8050 |

XC2 series, XC3-24/32, XC5-48/60

| Input <br> Terminal | Pointer Nr. <br> Rnsing <br> Interruption |  | Falling <br> Interruption |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |
| X 2 | I 0000 | I 0001 | M 8050 |
| X 5 | I 0100 | I 0101 | M 8051 |
| X 10 | I 0200 | I 0201 | M 8052 |

XC 3-48/60, XC3-19AR-E

| $\begin{array}{c}\text { Input } \\ \text { Terminal }\end{array}$ | Pointer Nr. |  | $\begin{array}{c}\text { Disable the } \\ \text { interruption } \\ \text { Interruption }\end{array}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | \(\left.\begin{array}{c}Falling <br>

Interruption\end{array}\right\rangle\)

XC5-24/32, XCM-24/32-

| Input <br> Terminal | Pointer Nr. |  | Disable the <br> interruption <br> instruction |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Rising <br> Interruption | Falling <br> Interruption |  |
| X 2 | I 8050 |  |  |
| X 5 | I 0100 | I 0101 | M 8051 |
| X 10 | I 0200 | I 0201 | M 8052 |
| X 11 | I 0300 | I 0301 | M 8053 |
| X 12 | I 0400 | I 0401 | M 8054 |

## Interruption Instruction

Enable Inter ruption [EI], Disable Interruption [DI], Interruption Return [IRET]


I If use EI instruction to allow interruption, then when scanning the program, if interruption input changes from OFF to be ON, then execute subroutine(1), (2), return to the original main program;

I Interruption pointer ( $\mathrm{I}^{* * * *}$ ) should be behind FEND instruction;

I PLC is default to allow interruption

Interruption's R ange Limitation

| Via program with DI instruction, set interruption forbidden area;
I Allow interruption input between EI~DI
I If interruption forbidden is not required, please program only with EI, program with DI is not required.

## Disable The Interruption



I Every input interruption is equipped with special relay (M8050~M8052) to disable interruption;

In the condition of main program's execution cycle long, if you need to handle a special program; or during the sequential scanning, a special program needs to be executed at every certain time, time interruption function is required. This function is not affected by PLC's scan cycle, every Nm, execute time interruption subroutine.


I Time interruption is default in open status, time interruption subroutine is similar with other interruption subroutine, it should be written behind the main program, starts with I40xx, ends with IRET.
I There are 10 CH time interruptions. The represent method is $\mathrm{I} 40^{* *} \sim \mathrm{I} 49^{* *}$ ("**" means time interruption's time, unit is ms. For example, I4010 means run one channel time interruption every 10 ms .

```
Interruption Nr.
```

| Interruption Nr. | Interruption <br> Forbidden <br> Instruction | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| I40** | M8056 | "**" represents time interruption's time, range from 1 to 99 , unit is ms. |
| I41** | M8057 |  |
| I42** | M8058 |  |
| I43** | - |  |
| I44** | - |  |
| I45** | - |  |
| I46** | - |  |
| I47** | - |  |
| I48** | - |  |
| I49** | - |  |

## Inter ruption range's limitation

I Normally time interruption is in "allow" status
I With EI, DI can set interruption's allow or forbidden area. As in the above graph, all time interruptions are forbidden between DI~EI, and allowed beyond DI~EI.


```
Interruption Forbidden
```



I The first 3 CH interruptions are equipped with special relays (M8056~M8059) to forbid interrupt

I In the left example program, if use M0 to enable M8056 "ON", the forbid 0CH's time interruption.

## 12 <br> Application Program Samples

In this chapter, we make some samples about pulse output instruction, Modbus communication instructions and free format communication instructions etc.

12-1. Pulse Output Sample

12-2. Modbus Communication Sample

12-3. Free Format Communication Sample

## 12-1 . Pulse O utput A pplication

Example: below is the example program to send high/low pulse in turn
Each Parameter:
Stepping motor parameters: step angle $=1.8$ degrees $/$ step, scale $=40$, pulse number per rotate is 8000
High frequency pulse: maximum frequency is 100 KHz , total pulse number is 24000 ( 3 rotates) Low frequency pulse: maximum frequency is 10 KHz , total pulse number is 8000 ( 1 rotates)

Ladder Program:


Instruction List:

| LD | M8002 | //initial positive pulse coil |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| SET | M0 | //set M0 ON |  |
| LDF | M10 | //M10 falling edge activate condition |  |
| OR | M8002 |  | //Initial data |
| DMOV | K100000 | D200 | //move decimal data 100000 into DWORD D200 |
| DMOV | K24000 | D210 | // move decimal data 24000 into DWORD D210 |
| MOV | K100 | D220 | // move decimal data 100 into DWORD D220 |
| LDP | M10 |  | //M10 rising edge activate condition |
| DMOV | K10000 | D200 | // move decimal data 10000 into DWORD D200 |



## Explanation:

When PLC changes from STOP to be RUN, M8002 gets a scan cycle; set the high frequency pulse parameters into D200, D210, set the acceleration/deceleration speed to D220, set M0, the motor starts to run 3 rounds with high frequency. Meantime M8170 sets; the motor runs 3 rounds and decelerate, stop, coil M8170 reset; then reset M0, set M1, NOT M10; set the low frequency pulse parameters into D200, D210; the timer time lags 2 sec , when time reaches, reset M 1 ; set M0, the motors starts to run 1 round with low frequency; after this starts to run with high frequency. Repeat this alternation time by time;

## 12-2. M ODBUS COM M UNICATION SAM PLES

E.g.1: realize Modbus read/write among one master and three slaves

Operation: (1) write content in D10~D14 to D10~D14 of 2\# slave;
(2) read D15~D19 of the slaves to D15~D19 of the mater; anyhow, write the first five registers' content to the slaves, the left five registers are used to store the content from the slaves;
(3) 3\# , 4\# slaves are similar;

Soft component's comments:
D0: communication station number
D1: offset
M2: 2\# communication error
M3: 3\# communication error
M4: 4\# communication error
M8137: COM2 communication error end signal
M8138: COM2 communication correct end signal

S0: write the target station
S1: read the target station
S2: judge the communication status
S3: offset the communication ID
T200: communication interval 1
T201: communication interval 2
T202: self reset 1 of communication error
T203: self reset 2 of communication error

Ladder


In PLC's first scan cycle, evaluate the "communication station" to be 2;

Evaluate the "offset" to be 0

2\# communication error reset

3\# communication error reset

4\# communication error reset

S0 starts, T202 counts 2 S , which is the communication wait time

When the communication wait time reaches, no matter the communication succeeds or not, T200 time 20 ms , this time is used start the next communication

T200 time reaches, or on the power up, execute the RUN operation to the target station

Open the flow S1


S0 starts, T203 time 2 s, which is the communication waiting time

When communication waiting time reaches, no matter the communication succeeded or not, T201 counts 20 ms , this time is used to start the next communication

T201 times reach, or on the power up, execute the read operation with the target stations

Open flow S2

Flow S 2 is used to judge the communication status. Failure will set the correspond coil; success will reset the correspond coil;

If the station number is not larger than 4 , the station register add 1 , the offset add 10

If the station number is larger than 4 , evaluate the station register 1 ; clear the offset register

Open flow S0

## Program Explanation:

When PLC turns from STOP to RUN, M8002 gets a scan cycle. S0 flow open, write the master's D10-_D14 to slave 2\# D10-_D14. no matter the communication is success or not, turn to S1 flow; check the previous communication written condition. After certain time delay, continue to read D15~D19 data from 2\#. After this reading entr S2 flow, check if the communication is success. If failed, set M23, enter alarming. After finishing the communication with 2 \#, enter S 3 ,
then flow S3 will judge with the station number. If the station number is less than 1 , the offset add 10; or else start from 2\# again.
e.g. 2: Below is the sample of XINJE XC series PLC with two of XINJE inverters, they communicate via Modbus communication, XC series PLC write the frequency to the two inverters;
set the first inverter's station to be 1 ; set the second inverter's station to be 2 ; store the frequency's set value in D1000 and D2000. execute the frequency setting order via COM ports;

| $\underset{\|\Uparrow\|}{\substack{\text { M8012 } \\ \hline}}$ | REGW | K1 | H2001 | D1000 | K2 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| M8012 |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\downarrow$ | REGW | K2 | H2001 | D1000 | K2 |

## Program Description:

On the rising edge of M8012, write frequency to the first inverter; on the falling edge of M8012, write frequency to the second inverter;

## 12-3. Free Format Communication Example

In this example, we use DH107/DH108 series instruments;

1, Interface Specifications
DH107/DH108 series instruments use asynchronous serial communication interface, the interface level fits RS232C or RS485 standard. The data format is: 1 start bit, 8 data bits, no parity, one/two stop bit. The baud rate can be 1200~19200bit/s .

## 2, Communication Instruction Format

DH107/108 instruments use Hex data form to represent each instruction code and data;
Read/write instructions:
Read: address code +52 H (82) +the para.(to read) code $+0+0+$ CRC parity code
W rite: address code +43 H (67) + the para.(to write) code +low bytes of the wrote data + high bytes of the wrote data +CRC parity code
The read instruction's CR C parity code is: the para. (to read) code *256+82+A DDR
ADDR is instrument's address para., the range is $0 \sim 100$ (pay attention not to add 80 H ). CRC is the remainder from the addition of the above data (binary 16bits integral). The reminder is 2 bytes, the high byte is behind the low byte;
The write instruction's CRC parity code is: the para. (to write) code *256+67+ the para. value (to write) +ADDR
The para. to write represents with 16 bits binary integral;
No matter to write or read, the instrument should return data as shown below:
The test value PV + given value SV + output value MV and alarm status +read/write parameters value +CRC parity code
Among in, PV, SV and the read parameters are all in integral form, each occupies two bytes, MV occupies one byte, the value range is $0 \sim 220$, alarm status occupies one byte, CRC parity code occupies two bytes, totally 10 byes.
CRC parity code is the reminder from the result of $\mathrm{PV}+\mathrm{SV}+($ alarm status *256+M V $)+$ para. value +A DDR ;
(for details, please refer to AIBUS communication description)

3, Write the program
After power on the PLC, the PLC read the current temperature every 40ms. During this period, the user can write the set temperature.
Data zone definition: buffer area of sending data D10~D19
buffer area of accepting data D20~D29
instruction's station number: D30
read command's value: D31=52 H
write command's value: D32=43 H
parameter's code: D33
temperature setting: D34

CRC parity code: D36
Temperature display: D200,D201
The send data form: 81 H 81 H 43 H 00 H c 8 H 00 H 0 cH 01 H (current temperature display)
Communication parameters setting: baud rate: 9600, 8 data bits, 2 stop bits, no parity
Set FD8220=255; FD8221=5
( the hardware and software must be V2.4 or above)

Ladder:


Write instrument's station Nr. K1 in to D30

Time 40 ms

Output M10

Write the read code 52H into D31
Clear registers D40-D56
D30 add H 80 to get value 81 H
move $\mathrm{D} 40(81 \mathrm{H})$ to D 10
move D40 (81H) to D11
move D31 (read code 52 H ) to D12
move D33 (para. code) to D13
write zero to D14
write zero to D15
below is to calculate CRC parity;
D33 multiply K256, the result is saved in D42
D42 add K82, the result is stored in D44
D44 add D30 (instrument's station), the result is saved in D52
Move D52 into D54
Logic AND D54 with HFF, save the result in D16

Move D52 into D56
Right shift 8 bits with D56 (convert the high 8 bits to the low 8 bits)
Logic AND D56 with HFF, save the result in D17


## Program Description:

The above program is written according to DH instrument's communication protocol, the soft component's functions are listed below:

Relationship of sent (SEND) data string and registers:

|  | D10 | D11 | D12 | D13 | D14 | D15 | D16 | D17 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Read | Address <br> code | Address <br> code | Read <br> code <br> 52 H | Parameters <br> code | 0 | 0 | CRC <br> low <br> bytes | CRC <br> high <br> bytes |
| Write | Address <br> code | Address <br> code | Write <br> code <br> 42 H | Parameters <br> code | low <br> bytes of <br> the <br> written <br> data | high <br> bytes of <br> the <br> written <br> data | CRC <br> low <br> bytes | CRC <br> high <br> bytes |

Relationship of received (RCV) data (data returned by the instrument) and the registers:

| D20 | D21 | D22 | D23 | D24 | D25 | D26 | D27 | D28 | D29 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| PV <br> low <br> bytes | PV <br> high <br> bytes | SV <br> low <br> bytes | SV <br> high <br> bytes | Output <br> value | Alarm <br> status | Read/write <br> low bytes | Read/write <br> high bytes | CRC <br> low <br> bytes | CRC <br> high <br> bytes |

So, if write data string according to the communication objects' protocol, use SEND and RCV commands from free format communication, user will get the communication with the objects.


[^0]:    Stop when power ON Function

[^1]:    ※ 1: FWRT instruction only allow to write data into FlashRom register. In this storage, even battery drop, data could be used to store important technical parameters

